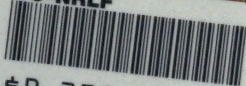


UC-NRLF



\$B 290 688

SECOND YEAR LATIN
FOR SIGHT READING
CAESAR AND NEPOS

JANES

JAN 20 1912
GIFT

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.


GIFT OF

Class

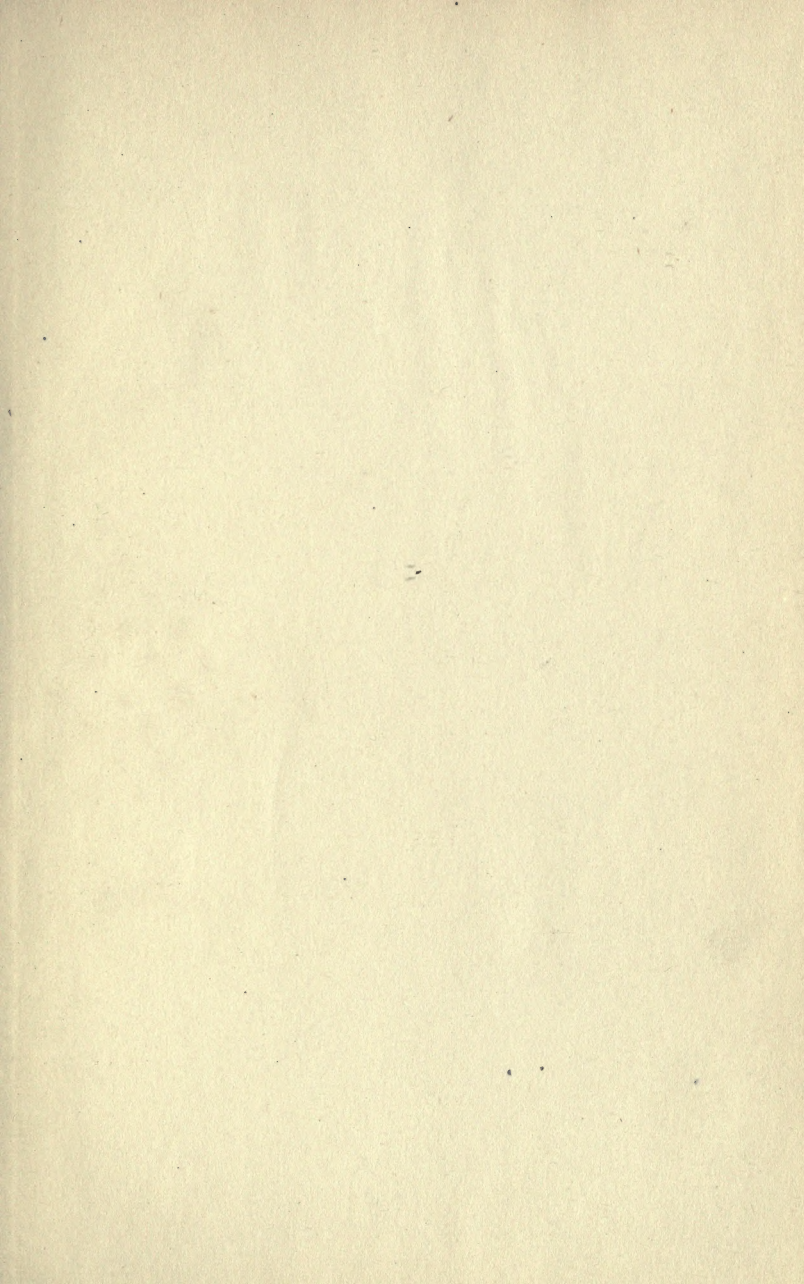
760
J 33

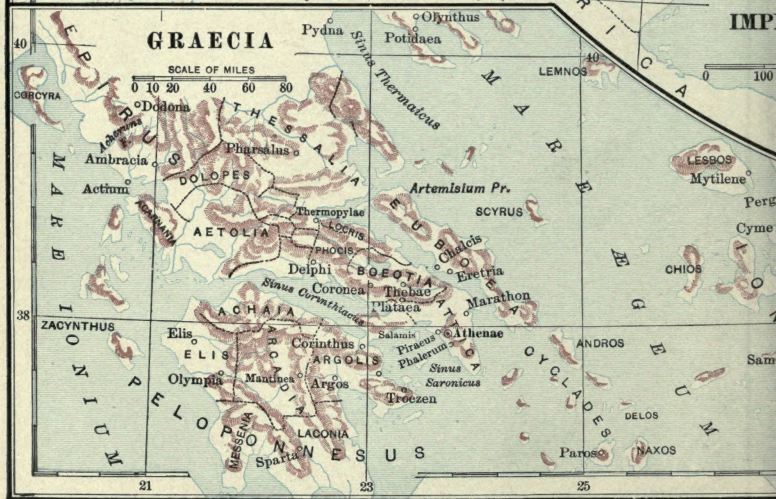
760

J33



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





7

SECOND YEAR LATIN

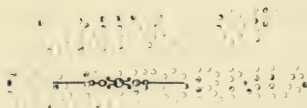
FOR SIGHT READING

SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR AND
NEPOS

BY

ARTHUR L. JANES

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN



NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Pres. '68

COPYRIGHT, 1911, BY

ARTHUR L. JANES.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

SECOND YEAR LATIN.

W. P. I



PREFACE

THE conviction has long been growing that pupils, in their study of Latin, are not gaining all they should in power to translate; that too much effort is expended on syntax and on thumbing the vocabulary. In most schools this intensive work of the second year has been limited to the first four books of Caesar's *Gallic War*. Students have learned to depend on notes and vocabulary rather than upon themselves. They have done little independent thinking. In this way they have spent much time and yet have made scanty progress in ability to translate, and have lost all opportunity to read the more interesting parts of Books V, VI, and VII of the *Gallic War*, the very important and highly entertaining narrative of the *Civil War*, and the attractive *Lives* of Nepos. To remedy these conditions is the purpose of this book.

Selections have been made from Books III-VII of the *Gallic War*, from Book III of the *Civil War*, and from Nepos. All words which Professor Lodge in *The Vocabulary of High School Latin* has shown should be mastered by the end of the second year are printed in full-faced type in the text where they first occur. These words with their meanings and forms, together with all other first occurrences, are given in the page vocabularies. The meanings—but not the forms—of others are repeated where necessary, so that pupils will carry in mind only that definite and limited list of words which Professor

Lodge has shown to be of frequent occurrence and of the greatest value.

The footnotes include the meanings of the less usual words, unusual meanings of common words, hints on derivation and translation, and synonyms. Matters of syntax and history have been reduced to a minimum.

The chapter on word formation has been made short and simple with the thought that much of this work should be postponed till later in the course.

The editor wishes to acknowledge his gratitude to the many teachers of Latin who have given helpful suggestions, and especially to Dr. Ernst Riess, Chairman of the Department of Ancient Languages in the Boys' High School, Brooklyn, who has carefully read the entire manuscript.

ARTHUR L. JANES.

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
SIGHT TRANSLATION	7
CAESAR: Selections from the Gallic War	
Book III	9
Book IV	25
Book V	32
Book VI	63
Book VII	86
CAESAR: Selections from the Civil War	
Book III	109
NEPOS: Life and Works	165
Selections from the Lives:	
I. Miltiades	166
II Themistocles	176
III. Cimon	187
IV. Epaminondas	191
V. Hannibal	203
VI. Cato	216
WORD FORMATION	221
INDEX OF PROPER NAMES	223

SIGHT TRANSLATION

THIS volume contains considerably more Latin than is generally read in the second year. The purpose of the additional matter is that the teacher may be given a comparatively wide range of choice and *not* that a much greater amount be read. It cannot be too strongly urged that teachers should exercise the utmost care lest sight translation become a matter of quantity rather than of quality, and lest the pupil think that translation is the result of combining memory with guesswork. It must be understood that the purpose of sight translation is the development of power — not the careless reading of much Latin. The difference between sight translation and the prepared translation is one not of quantity but simply of method. In sight translation, only that information is given which is absolutely and wholly new to the pupil. For the rest he must depend upon his own experience and ingenuity.

It is suggested that a large part of this sight work be done in class. The pupil should be urged to follow closely and get whatever he can from the sentence as the Latin is carefully read by the teacher. The reading may be repeated several times and the meaning brought out so far as possible by careful accentuation. The pupil may then be asked to give the meaning of the sentence in a general way. This may be followed by a rereading by phrases in order of occurrence, and the main import of each phrase and its relation to others should be under-

stood before it is left. The meaning of many phrases is so clear that translation will be found unnecessary. Another reading by the teacher will serve to make the various parts of the sentence fall into their proper relations in the student's mind. Following this a pupil may be asked to give in his own words—with the text before him—not a translation but the full and complete meaning of the sentence as it appears to him. By this method, much of the slavish adherence to Latin idioms will be avoided.

The text covered in this way may be the assigned translation for the next recitation when syntax and forms may be considered as fully as desired. It should be remembered, however, that syntactical questions should be asked simply for the purpose of ascertaining the pupil's knowledge of the bearing of the phrase or word on the meaning of the sentence and not for the purpose of attaching labels to ablatives and subjunctives.

C. IULII CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER TERTIUS

Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba goes into winter quarters at Octodurus.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs, Sedūnōsque misit, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad
5 summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit quod¹ iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum periculō magnisque cum

INCIPIT LIBER III. FELICITER

Cum in Italia proficisceretur Caesar, servum galbā cū legione dxi.
et parte equitatus in nantuatos, veragros, sedunos quo misit, qui

Beginning of the Third Book of the Gallic War, from a manuscript of the tenth century. Reduced one half.

portōriis² mercātōrēs ire cōsuērant,³ patefierī volēbat. Huic permisit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundis⁴
10 aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque complūribus eōrum expugnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis, obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituīt cohortēs duās in Nantu-

aliquot, indecl. adj., several.

1. quod iter . . . patefierī:
preserve the Latin order in translation; iter is subject of patefierī.

2. customs duty.

3. (Contracted from cōsuēverant): were (lit. had become) accustomed.

4. Translate the five ablatives absolute by short, simple sentences.

ātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs eius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in **valle**, nōn magnā¹ adiectā plānitīē,² altissimis montibus undique continētur. Cum³
 5 hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuum ab hīs relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

The mountain tribes revolt and occupy near-by heights.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frū-
 10 mentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id⁴ aliquot⁵ dē causis acciderat, ut
 15 subitō Galli bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem ūnam, neque⁶ eam plēnissimam, dētractīs⁷ cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātīm, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus⁸ propter paucitātem dēspiciē-

vallēs, vallis, f., *a valley*.

adi-ciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *add*;

cf. ad + iaciō: adiectā as an adj.,

lying near.

attribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum,

assign.

renovō, *renew*; cf. novus.

plēnus, -a, -um, *full*.

singillātīm, adv.; cf. singulī.

paucitās, paucitātis, f.; cf. pauci.

1. nōn magnā = parvā.

2. *plain*.

3. Causal.

4. Explained by ut . . . caperent.

5. aliquot dē causīs: these reasons are (1) quod . . . dēspiciēbant, (2) quod . . . exīstimābant,

(3) quod . . . dolēbant, and

(4) (quod) . . . habēbant.

6. *and not*.

7. dētractīs . . . absentibus: these ablatives absolute give the reasons for neque eam plēnissimam.

8. Abl. abs. with complūribus.

bant;¹ tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem² locī, cum ipsi³ ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinēri existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs
 5 abstractōs obsidum⁴ nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs⁵ nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis⁶ culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

The Romans, called to a council, determine to defend their position.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hiber-
 10 nōrum mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō senti-
 15 tum repentinī periculī⁸ praeter opiniōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidiō⁹ veniri¹⁰ neque commeātūs supportārī¹¹ interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eius modī senten-
 20 tiae dīcēbantur, ut impedimentis relictis ēruptiōne factā

abstrahō; cf. trahō.
 culmen, culminis, n., *top.*

adiungō; cf. iungō.

1. *despised.*
 2. *propter inīquitātem: on account of the unfavorable character; modifies sustinēri.*

3. The mountaineers.
 4. *obsidum nōmine: as (lit. under the name of) hostages.*

5. *Rōmānōs . . . adiungere; tells the fact which sibi persuāsum habēbant.*

6. *Sc. causā.*
 7. *ask for.*
 8. Partitive gen. with *tantum.*
 9. *Dat. of purpose.*
 10. Impersonal and passive, but translate as personal and active. Supply *posset* from *possent.*
 11. *Cf. portō.*

isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri¹ et castra dēfendere.

The Romans are attacked and outnumbered.

5 4. Brevī spatiō interiectō,² vix ut iis rēbus³ quās cōstituissent comparandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs⁴ ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaeque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī primō integrīs⁵ vīribus fortiter prōpugnāre⁶ neque ūllum frūstrā
10 tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hōc⁷ superārī, quod diūturnitātē⁸ pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs⁹ vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum¹⁰ ā nostrīs
15 propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo¹¹ dēfessō¹² ex pugnā excēdendī,¹³ sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōstitērat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

gaesum, -ī, n., *heavy javelin*.

integer, -gra, -grum, *untouched, fresh*.

frūstrā, *in vain*.

saucius, -a, -um, *wounded, hurt, injured*.

1. experiri and dēfendere: subjects of placuit. Trans.: *the majority voted to try, etc., and to defend*.

2. Cf. iaciō.

3. Dative.

4. Nom. as subject of the historical infinitives decurrere and conicere: so also nostrī . . . prōpugnāre, line 9, etc.

5. integrīs vīribus: abl. abs., denoting time.

6. Note the force of the prō in prōpugnāre.

7. Abl. of specification.

8. long duration.

9. integrīs vīribus: abl. of description.

10. Partitive gen. with nihil.

11. nōn modo: sc. nōn.

12. dēfessō, sauciō: indirect objects of dabātur.

13. excēdendī, locī relinquendī, suī recipiendī: modify facultās.

After a six hours' battle, Galba decides upon a sally.

5 Cum iam amplius hōrīs
sex continenter pugnārētur,¹ ac
nōn solum vīrēs sed etiam tēla
nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs
10 ācrius instārent, languidiōribus-
que² nostrīs vāllum scindere et
fossās complēre coepissent, rēs-
que esset iam ad extrēmum per-
ducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus,
15 primī pīlī centuriō, quem³ Ner-
vicō proeliō complūribus cōn-
fectum vulneribus diximus, et
item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus
mīlitum, vir et cōsiliī magnī et
20 virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt⁴
atque ūnam esse spem salūtis
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrē-
mum auxilium experīrentur. Ita-
que convocātis centuriōnibus ce-
25 leriter mīlītēs certiōrēs facit paulisper intermitterent⁵
proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex
labōre **reficerent**, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent
atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.



Centurion

languidus, -a, -um, listless.

*scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, split,
cut down. Cf. rescindō.*

*pīlus, -ī, m., with primus, of the
first rank (in a legion).*

*Nervicus, -a, -um, of the Nervii.
tantummodo, only.*

reficiō ; cf. faciō.

*ērumpō, -ere, -rupī, -ruptum,
burst forth.*

1. *had been (and was still
being) fought.*

2. *languidiōribus nostrīs : abl.
abs. of cause.*

3. *Subject of cōnfectum (esse).*

4. *rushed up.*

5. *This, together with the four
following subjunctives, repre-
sents imperative of direct dis-
course.*

The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters.

6. Quod iussī¹ sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis
 ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque suī²
 colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-
 mūtātā³ fortūnā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum
 5 vēnerant undique circumventōs intercipiunt,⁴ et ex ho-
 minum mīlibus⁵ amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum
 ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā
 reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis
 quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus
 10 hostium cōpiīs fūsis armisque⁶ exūtis sē in castra mūni-
 tiōnēque suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod
 saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō⁷ sē
 in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs⁷ occurrisse
 rēbus⁸ vidēbat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā
 15 permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vicī aedificiīs in-
 cēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit ac nūllō hoste
 prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem
 in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hie-
 māvit.

colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *col-
 lect.*

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum,
stand together, stand firm.
 Here impersonal, *it was agreed,*
it was ascertained.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour,*
throw, rout.

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtum, *draw
 off, despoil.*

meminī, meminisse, defective, the
 perfect, pluperf., and future perf.
 having the meanings of the pres.,
 imperf., and future respectively,
remember.

dēmoror, 1; cf. moror.

1. iussī sunt: sc. facere, of
 which quod is object.

2. suī colligendī: *of collecting
 themselves, i.e. of rallying.*

3. *changed.*

4. *cut off; cf. intercept.*

5. ex mīlibus: modifies tertiā
 parte.

6. Abl. of separation with
 exūtis which agrees with cōpiīs.

7. *one, other.*

8. *conditions.*

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 7-16

In northwestern Gaul, a revolt breaks out which is led by the Veneti, a seafaring tribe. To meet them, Caesar orders a fleet built, and places Brutus in command, while other staff officers are sent to engage the attention of certain other revolting tribes. Because of the peculiar situation of their towns, the Veneti for a time prolong the revolt. But when Caesar's new fleet arrives, the enemy is outmaneuvered and utterly defeated.

Sabinus goes north against the Venelli, encamps and refuses battle.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiis quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praeerat Viridovix ac summam imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae
 5 dēfēcera^{nt}, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque his paucis diēbus¹ Aulerci Eburovices Lexovii^{que} senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōres bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt² sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērunt; magna^{que} praetereā multitudō undique
 10 ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnum^{que} convēnerat; aliōs spēs praedandī studium^{que} bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotidiānō labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castris³ sēsē tenēbat, cum⁴ Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiē^{que} prō-
 15 ductis cōpiis pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum hostibus⁵ in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed

auctor, auctōris, m., *promoter*; here, *responsible for*.

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *give over, ruin*. As an adj. *here*.

latrō, latrōnis, m., *robber, thief, brigand*.

agricultūra, -ae, f.; cf. *ager + colō, cultivate*.

sēvocō, I, *call aside*.

contemptiō, contemptiōnis, f.; cf. Eng. *contempt*.

1. Abl. of time within which.

2. *closed*.

3. Abl. of means.

4. *Concessive*.

5. Dative of reference: *trans., in the eyes of the enemy*.

etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur ; tantamque opiniōnem¹ timōris prae-
castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā
faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne² hostium, prae-
sertim eō absente quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi
aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmican-
dum nōn existimābat.

Sabinus by stratagem induces the enemy to attack.

18. Hāc cōfirmatā opiniōne timōris idōneum quen-
dam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum,³ ex iis⁴ quōs
auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs
pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet utī ad hostēs trāseat, et
quid fieri velit ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā⁵ ad eōs vēnit,
timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustīis ipse
Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet⁶ neque⁷ longius
abesse quā proximā nocte Sabinus **clam** ex castrīs
exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā
proficiscātur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclāmant omnēs
occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse,

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptum, *cen-
sure.*

opportunitās, opportunitātis, f.,
favorable chance.

callidus, -a, -um, *shrewd, clever,
crafty.*

pollicitātiō, pollicitātiōnis, f. ; cf.

polliceor.

ēdoceō ; cf. doceō.

clam, *secretly.*

occāsiō, occāsiōnis, f., *chance, op-
portunity.*

bene, melius, optimē, adv. ; cf.
bonus.

1. *impression.*

2. cum . . . multitudīne: mod-
ifies dīmican-
dum.

3. *a Gaul.*

4. *(one) of those.*

5. prō perfugā: *as though a
deserter.*

6. docet has as objects quibus
. . . premātur and neque longius
abesse, etc.

7. neque . . . quā: lit. *and
it was not farther away but that.*
abesse has for subject quā . . .
proficiscātur.

ad castra iri oportere. Multae res¹ ad hoc consilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum,² cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat prōvisum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn³ prius Viridovicem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dimittunt quam ab iis sit concessum arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut⁴ explorātā victōriā, sarmentis virgultisque collēctīs quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant,⁵ ad castra pergunt.

Sabinus gains a complete victory.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab imō acclivis⁶ circiter⁷ passūs⁸ mille. Hūc magnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiū ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus⁹ sīgnū dat. Impeditīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portis ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est¹⁰ opportunitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatigā-

cunctātiō, cunctātiōnis, f., *de-lay*.

cōfirmātiō, cōfirmātiōnis, f.; cf. cōfirmō.

parum, minus, minimē, *too little, not sufficiently*; cf. parvus.

laetus, -a, -um, *glad*.

sarmentum, -ī, n., *twig*.

virgulta, -ōrum, n., *brambles*.

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *keep straight, proceed*.

īnscientia, -ae, f.; cf. sciō.

dēfatigātiō, dēfatigātiōnis, f., *weariness*.

1. Explained by the four following noms. and quod . . . crēdunt.

2. *food supplies*.

3. nōn prius . . . quam: *no sooner . . . than*.

4. *as though*.

5. Subjunctive of purpose.

6. *sloping upward*.

7. Adv.

8. Acc. of extent with acclivis.

9. Sc. eīs as indir. obj. of dat.

10. factum est = *it turned out*. opportunitāte = *favorable character*. This and the following abls. denote cause.

tiōne, virtūte militum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitā-
 tiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac¹
 statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs viribus milītēs
 nostri cōsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occidērunt;
 5 reliquōs equitēs² cōsectātī paucōs³ quī ex fugā ēvāserant
 reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā
 Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victoriā Caesar certior factus est,
 civitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam
 ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōptus est
 10 animus,⁴ sic mollis ac minimē resistēns⁵ ad calamitātēs
 perferendās mēns⁶ eōrum est.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 20-22

Crassus, realizing that he must meet a foe who has in former engagements vanquished Roman armies, takes unusual precautions. The Sotiates in Aquitania make an unsuccessful attack on the Romans and later, after entrapping Crassus in an ambush, are again routed and their town is seized. Their chief, Adiatunnus, attempts to escape with his six hundred faithful followers, but fails.

Crassus urges the enemy to fight.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in finēs Vo-
 cātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī
 commōtī, quod oppidum⁷ et nātūrā locī et manū mūni-

cōnsector, I, the frequentative
 form of cōsequor.

ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, go
 forth, escape.

nāvālis, -e; cf. nāvis.

alacer, -cris, -cre, eager.

prōptus, -a, -um, ready.

mollis, -e, weak.

1. but.

2. Nominative.

3. Obj. of reliquērunt.

4. spirit.

5. sturdy.

6. purpose.

7. Subject of expugnātum
 (esse).

tum¹ paucis diēbus² quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitatēs lēgātī quae sunt cīteriōris Hispaniae³ finitimae⁴ Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū⁵ magnā cum auctōritāte⁶ et magnā cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimābantur. Hi cōnsuetūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere,⁷ castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. Quod⁸ ubi Crassus animadvertit⁹ suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem¹⁰ nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et¹¹ castris satis praesidiī relinquere, et ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī,¹² in diēs¹³ hostium numerum augērī, nōn **cunctandum** existimāvit quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentire intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae¹⁴ cōstituit.

quōqueversus, *in every direction*;
cf. quōque + vertō.
didūcō; cf. dūcō.

obsidēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum,
besiege.
cunctor, 1, *delay.*

1. Here an adj.
2. diēbus and quibus: each an abl. of time within which, *within a few days after they had arrived there.*
3. Predicate gen. of possession.
4. Agrees with quae and governs the dat. Aquitāniae.
5. Abl. of cause.

6. *assurance.*
7. Here, *select.*
8. *and so.*
9. Introduces the six following infinitives.
10. *small number.*
11. *and still.*
12. Cf. portō.
13. in diēs: *day by day.*
14. Dative.

The enemy refuses battle and Crassus attacks them.

24. Primā lūce prōductis omnibus cōpiis, duplici aciē institūtā, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostēs cōsiliū caperent expectābat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem et veterem belli glōriam paucitatemque nostrorum sē tūtō dīmīcātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse¹ arbitrābantur obsessis viis commeātū interclūsō sine vulnere victōriā potīrī et, si propter inopiam rei frūmentāriæ Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs² infirmiorēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant.³ Hōc cōsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductis Rōmānōrum cōpiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne⁴ atque opīniōne⁵ timōris hostēs⁶ nostrōs militēs alacriorēs ad pugnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur expectārī 15 diūtius nōn oportēre⁷ quā ad castra irētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The enemy make a strong defense, but Crassus is informed that the rear of the camp is weak.

25. Ibi cum⁸ aliī fossās complērent, aliī multis tēlis coniectis dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, 20 auxiliārēsque, quibus nōn multum Crassus cōfīdēbat,

tūtō, adv.; cf. tūtus.

infirmus, -a, -um; cf. firmus.

dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, dēpulsum;
cf. pellō.

auxiliāris, -e, an adj. used here
as a noun, as often in the
plural; cf. auxilium.

1. The subject is potīrī.

2. baggage.

3. planned.

4. Cf. cunctōr.

5. appearance.

6. Nominative.

7. Depends on the idea of saying found in vōcēs.

8. Introduces complērent, dēpellerent, and praeberent.

ad pugnam lapidibus tēlisque subministrandis¹ et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opīnionem pugnantium praeberent, cum² item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō
 5 superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs³ hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse diligentīā ab⁴ decumānā⁵ portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

Crassus charges the camp and kills three fourths of the enemy.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus ut magnīs
 10 praemiis pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductis iīs cohortibus quae praesidiō castrīs relictæ intritæ ab labōre erant et longiōre itinere circumductis,⁶ nē ex hostium castrīs cōspicī possent, omnium oculis mentibusque
 15 ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās quās diximus mūntiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutis prius in hostium castrīs cōstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī⁷ aut quid rei gererētur cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis⁸ vīribus, quod⁹ plē
 20 rumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventi dē-

caespes, caespitis, m., sod.
 circumeō; cf. eō.

excitō, I, arouse, spur on.

intritus, -a, -um, unworn, unwearied.

intendō, -ere, -tendī, tentum,
 direct toward.

prōruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, destroy,
 break down.

plānē, clearly.

1. *furnishing.*

2. Introduces pugnārētur and acciderent.

3. Abl. abs. with castrīs: after riding around the camp.

4. from the side of.

5. rear.

6. Modifies cohortibus.

7. Sc. possent from posset.

8. Cf. integer.

9. Refers to ācrius impugnāre and is therefore neuter singular.

spērātis omnibus rēbus sē per¹ mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimis campis cōsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae² ex Aquitāniā Cantabrisque convēnisse cōstābat, 5 vix quārtā parte relictā multā³ nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Nearly all Aquitania surrenders.

27. Hāc auditā pugnā maxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, 10 Elusātēs, Gatēs, Ausci, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae⁴ ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfisae, quod **hiems** suberat,⁵ id facere neglēxērunt.

Caesar proceeds against the Morini and Menapii, but they retreat to the swamps.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsi prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morini 15 Menapiīque supererant⁶ quī in armīs essent neque⁷ ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī⁸ longē aliā ratiōne ac⁹ reliquī Gallī¹⁰ bellum gerere coe-

campus, -i, m., *plain*.
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.

exigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *finish*,
complete.

1. *over*.

2. Refers to **mīlium** and is subject of **convēnisse**, which in turn is subject of **cōstābat**; transl. *which it was understood had come*, etc.

3. **multā nocte**: *late at night*.

4. *only a few*.

5. *was near at hand*.

6. *were left*.

7. *and . . . not*.

8. *but they*.

9. *than*.

10. Sc. **gerēbant** as predicate.

pērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant maximās nātiōnēs quae proeliō contendissent pulsās superātāsque esse, **continentēs**que silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar
 5 pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectis longius¹
 10 impeditiōribus² locis secūti paucōs ex suis dēperdiderunt.³

Caesar lays waste their country and then goes into winter quarters.

29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit et, nē quis⁴ inermibus⁵ imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fierī pōsset, omnem eam **māteriam**
 15 quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incredibili celeritāte magnō spatiō paucis diēbus cōfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedimenta ā nostris tenērentur,⁶ ipsi dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eiusmodi sunt **tempestātēs**
 20 cōsecūtae uti opus necessariō intermitteretur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī

continēns, continentis, adj.; cf. teneō.

ēvolō, I, *rush forth*.

deinceps, adv., *one after another*.

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, *fell, cut*.

imprūdēns, imprudentis, *unwary*.

māteria, -ae, f., *material, timber*.

pecus, pecoris, n., *cattle, sheep*.

tempestās, tempestātis, f.; cf.

Eng. *tempest*.

continuātiō, continuātiōnis, f.; cf. Eng. *continuation*.

imber, imbris, m., *rain*.

1. *too far*.

2. *rather difficult*.

3. *lost*.

4. Modifies *impetus*.

5. *inermibus . . . militibus*: abl. abs.

6. *were on the point of being seized*.

nōn possent. Itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs, Lexoviīs, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

LIBER QUARTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-19

At this time practically all Gaul is under subjection to Rome. But Caesar realizes that the Germans menace the eastern border. Already two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, who have been driven from their homes, have crossed the Rhine into Gaul and conquered the Menapii. Caesar fears an alliance between Gauls and Germans, and determines to make war on the Germans. He tells the Usipetes and the Tencteri that there is no place for them in Gaul, but that they may settle in the territory of the Ubii just east of the Rhine. They delay their reply to this suggestion, and make a treacherous but successful attack on the Romans.

Prominent Germans come to Caesar to apologize for the attack, but are thrown into chains. Caesar makes a sudden attack upon the Germans, and slays nearly all of them. That the Germans east of the Rhine may be duly impressed, Caesar decides to cross the river. He builds a bridge in the extraordinarily short time of ten days, crosses, ravages the neighboring country, recrosses, and destroys the bridge.

Caesar decides upon an expedition to Britain, but can get little information about the country.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellis¹ hostibus² nostrīs inde
5 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adisset, genus hominum perspē-

exiguus, -a, -um, *small*.

īnsula, -ae, f., *island*.

1. Abl. of time when.

2. Indir. obj. of subministrāta.

xisset, loca, **portūs**, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē
 Gallis erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē¹ praeter
 mercātōrēs **illō** adit quisquam, neque hīs² ipsīs quicquam
 praeter ōram³ maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt
 5 contrā Galliam **nōtum est**. Itaque vocātis⁴ ad sē undi-
 que mercātōribus neque⁵ quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō,
 neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem
 ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īstitutīs ūterentur, ne-
 que quī⁶ essent ad maiōrem⁷ nāvium multitudinem idōneī
 10 portūs, reperīre poterat.

To gather information Caesar sends Volusenus, who proves unequal to the task.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum fa-
 ceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī
 longā praemittit. Huic mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus
 rēbus ad sē quam primum revertātur. Ipse cum omni-
 15 bus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat bre-
 vissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs⁸ undique
 ex finitimīs regiōnibus et quam⁹ superiōre aestāte ad
 Veneticum bellum fēcerat **classem** iubet convenīre. In-
 terim, cōsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad
 20 Britannōs, ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitatibus ad eum lē-

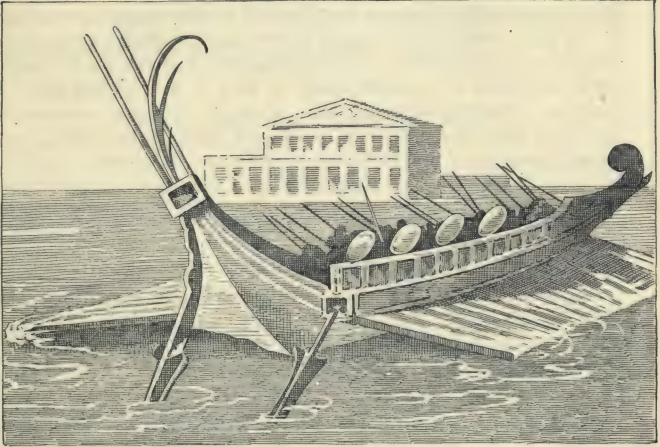
portus, -ūs, m., *harbor*.
incōgnitus, -a, -um, adj.; cf. cōg-
 nōscō.
illō, *to that place*.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, *learn*; in
 perf. tenses, *know*.
 trāiectus, -ūs, m., *passage*.
 classis, classis, f., *fleet*.

1. *readily*.
2. Dative with **nōtum est**, refers to the traders.
3. *coast*.
4. **vocātis** . . . **mercātōribus**: abl. abs. denoting concēssion.
5. **neque quanta**: introduce a

- series of indir. questions which are the objects of **reperīre**.
 6. Agrees with **portūs**.
 7. *rather large*.
 8. **nāvēs**, **classem**: subjects of **convenīre**.
 9. Its antecedent is **classem**.

gātī veniunt quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō
populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus auditīs liberāliter
pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent¹
eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium,² quem ipse
5 Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cuius et



Navis Longa.

virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse
arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī³
habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat quās possit adeat⁴ cīvi-
tātēs, hortēturque⁴ ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur,
10 sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.⁴ Volusēnus per-
spectīs regiōnibus, quantum⁵ eī facultātis dari potuit quī
obtemperō, I, obey. fidēlis, -e; cf. fidēs.

1. Cf. maneō.

2. Object of mittit.

3. Genitive of value.

4. Subjunctives expressing

command after imperat.

5. quantum . . . quī: lit.
how much of opportunity could
be given to him who.

nāvi ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 22-31

Caesar prepares a fleet, crosses with part of his army to Britain, and after a sharp encounter with the natives effects a landing. The Britons retreat, but Caesar from lack of cavalry cannot pursue them. A few tribes submit, but Caesar determines to await his cavalry before he advances farther. The transports in which his cavalry sail are driven back by a storm, and the fleet is nearly wrecked. The Britons, seeing their chance, plan to rebel. Caesar, however, realizes what their intentions are, repairs his fleet, and makes ready for emergencies.

One Roman legion, separated from the others, is attacked by the Britons.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōsuētūdine ūnā
5 frūmentātum¹ missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque
ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars
hominum² in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra venti-
tāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī
nūntiāvērunt pulverem maiōrem quam³ cōsuētūdō ferret
10 in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset.
Caesar id⁴ quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbaris
initum cōsiliī, cohortēs⁵ quae in statiōne erant sēcum in
eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem suc-
cēdere, reliquās armārī⁶ et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit.
15 Cum paulō longius ā castris prōcessisset, suōs ab hosti-

frūmentor, 1, *forage*.

ventitō, 1, frequentative of veniō.

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust*.

cōnfestim, *hastily*.

1. Supine showing the purpose of missā.

2. *i.e.* the Britons.

3. quam cōsuētūdō ferret:
lit. *than custom raised*.

4. Explained by aliquid . . . cōsiliī. id quod erat: *the fact*.

5. Subject of proficīscī.

6. *to arm themselves*.

bus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis partibus dēmesso frūmentō, pars ūna¹ erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs
 5 noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs² dēpositis armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucis interfectis reliquōs incertis³ ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 33-35

The Romans are thrown into confusion by the war chariots of the Britons, but Caesar frees the legion from its dangerous position. The enemy collect in large numbers, attack the Romans, and are defeated.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem
 10 dē pāce vērunt. Hīs⁴ Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūci iussit, quod propinquā⁵ diē aequinoctiī infirmīs nāvibus hiemī **nāvigātiōnem** subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam
 15 noctem **nāvēs solvit**; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervērunt; sed ex iis **onerāriae** duae eōdem

dēmētō, -ere, -messui, -messum,
reap.

dēlitescō, -ere, -litui, —, *hide.*
 metō; cf. dēmētō.

incertus, -a, -um; cf. certus.

essedum, -ī, n., *chariot.*

duplicō, ī, *double.*

aequinoctium, -ī, n., *the equinox*;
 cf. aequus + nox.

nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis, f., *sailing.*
 solvō, -ere, solvi, solūtum, *loosen*;
 with nāvēs, *weigh anchor.*

onerārius, -a, -um (with nāvēs),
transports; cf. Eng. *freighters.*

1. *only one.*

2. Agrees with nostrōs.

3. incertis ōrdinibus: abl. abs.
 of cause.

4. Dative of reference.

5. propinquā diē and infirmīs
 nāvibus: abls. abs. of cause,
 modifying subiciendam.

portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō
infrā dēlātae sunt.

The Morini attack part of the Romans as they return to Gaul.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi milītēs cir-
citer trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs
5 Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē
praedae adductī prīmō¹ nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō
circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere
iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter
ad² clāmōrem hominum³ circiter milia sex convēnērunt.
10 Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum
suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī milītēs impetum ho-
stium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōris quattuor fortissimē
pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptis complūrēs ex
eīs occidērunt. Postea⁴ vērō quam equitātus noster in
15 cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt
magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Labienuſ conquers the Morini, and the army goes into winter quarters.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iis
legiōnibus quās ex Britannā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī
rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs
20 palūdum quō⁵ sē recipere nōn habērent, quō perfugiō

infrā, adv., *below*.

expōnō; cf. pōnō; in pass., *dis-
embark*.

trecentī, -ae, -a; cf. trēs + cen-
tum.

praeda, -ae, f., *booty*.

orbis, orbis, m., *circle*.

abicio, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum; cf.
iaciō.

rebelliō, rebellōnis, f.; cf. re +
bellō.

siccitās, siccitātis, f., *drought,
drying out*.

perfugium, -i, n., *refuge, retreat*.

1. Adverb.

2. ad clāmōrem: *at their shout*.

3. Modifies milia.

4. posteā . . . quam: *after*.

5. quō . . . habērent: lit. *had
not where they might retreat*.

superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem
Labiēni vērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī,
quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus
eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs in-
5 cēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās
abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in
Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae
omninō civitatēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae
neglēxērunt. His rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris
10 diērum vīginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est

succidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsum, *cut down.*

LIBER QUINTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-5

Caesar realizes on his return to Gaul that, for a successful invasion of Britain, he needs a large army and fleet. He gives instructions that they be made ready, and goes himself to quiet a threatened disturbance among the Treveri. Upon his return a fleet of 800 ships and five legions with 2000 cavalry are found ready.

Treachery of Dumnorix.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēteris¹ Dumnorix Haeduus, dē quō ante² ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in primīs cōstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum imperiī, magnī animī, magnae inter Gallōs
5 auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc quod in conciliō Haeduōrum Dumnorix dixerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvītātis dēferri; quod dictum Haeduī graviter ferēbant, neque³ recūsandī aut dēprecandī⁴ causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suis hospiti-
10 bus⁵ Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille⁶ omnibus primō precibus petere contendit ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod insuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impediri sēsē diceret. Posteaquam id obstinātē sibi

insuētus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed, unused.*

nāvigō, I, *sail.*

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

religiō, religiōnis, f., *religion, scruples.*

obstinātē, *firmly, stubbornly, resolutely.*

1. *the others.*

2. In Bk. I, 18-20.

3. *and yet.*

4. *of begging off.*

5. *i.e. friends of Dumnorix.*

6. *i.e. Dumnorix.*

negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī **adēptā** prīncipēs
 Galliae sollicitāre,¹ sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit ut
 in continentī remanērent; metū territāre:² Nōn sine causā
 fierī³ ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōn-
 silium Caesaris, ut quōs in cōspectū Galliae interficere
 verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret:
 fidem reliquīs interpōnere,⁴ iūs iūrāndum poscere ut quod⁵
 esse ex⁶ ūsū Galliae intellēxissent commūnī cōsiliō
 administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem
 dēferēbantur.

Dumnorix deserts and is slain.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum⁷ cīvitatī
 Haeduae dignitātis tribuēbat, cōercendum⁸ atque dēter-
 rendum quibuscumque rēbus posset Dumnorīgem statuē-
 bat et, quod longius eius āmentiam⁹ prōgredi vidēbat,
 prōspiciendum¹⁰ nē quid¹¹ sibi ac rei pūblīcae **nocēre**
 posset. Itaque diēs circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus,
 quod Cōrus **ventus** nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī mag-
 nam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōsuēvit,

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *re-*
move.

metus, metūs, m., *fear, anxiety,*
dread.

territō, i, *alarm.*

spoliō, i, *strip.*

noceō, 2, *injure.*

commoror, i; cf. moror.

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

flō, *blow.*

1. *tamper with.*

2. Historical inf.

3. fierī, esse: infs. in indir.
 disc. depending on the idea of
 saying in territāre.

4. interpōnere, poscere: his-
 torical infs. interpōnere: *pledge.*

5. quod . . . intellēxissent:
 noun clause, the object of admi-
 nistrārent.

6. ex ūsū: *to the advantage*
of.

7. tantum dignitātis tribuē-
 bat: *he paid so much respect.*

8. *control.*

9. *folly.*

10. prōspiciendum (esse): *he*
must see to it; depends on statu-
ēbat.

11. quid nocēre: *do any harm.*

dabat operam ut in officiō Dumnorigem continēret, nihilō¹ tamen sētius omnia eius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem militēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium animis impeditis
 5 Dumnorix cum equitibus Haeduōrum ā castris insciente² Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar intermissā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositis magnam partem equitātūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahīque³ imperat; sī vim faciat
 10 neque pareat,⁴ interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō⁵ sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī⁶ praesentis⁷ imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere ac sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns liberum sē liberaeque esse civitātis. Illī, ut erat
 15 imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equitēs Haeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 8-11

About the 20th of July B.C. 54 Caesar sets sail, and arrives in Britain on the next day. The Britons offer no objections to his landing, but, upon the Romans' advance inland, resistance is made, which proves unsuccessful. Caesar is compelled 'to return to his fleet because of news that his ships have been wrecked by a storm. While he is making repairs, the Britons unite against him.

cōnscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum,
climb up, embark.
 postpōnō; cf. pōnō.

retrahō; cf. trahō.
 sānus, -a, -um, *sensible.*
 clāmitō, 1, *shout out.*

1. nihilō tamen sētius: *but nevertheless.*
 2. Cf. sciō.
 3. The infinitive with imperō is rare.

4. *obey.*
 5. prō sānō: *as a sensible person.*
 6. *since he.*
 7. Sc. ipsius (Caesaris).

Caesar's description of Britain and its inhabitants, which, however, contains many inaccuracies.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur quōs¹ nātōs
in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum² dīcunt, maritima pars³
ab iīs quī praedae ac bellī inferendī causā ex Belgiō
trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē isdem nōminibus civitātum
5 appellantur quibus ortī ex civitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et
bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.



Silver denarius, struck 38–36 B.C., enlarged to twice the original size. Obverse: head of Caesar. Reverse: standard, eagle, plow, scepter.

Hominum est infīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia
ferē Gallicis cōnsimilia, pecoris magnus numerus. Ūtun-
tur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pon-
10 dus exāminātis prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum⁴

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, *till, cultivate.*

infīnitus, -a, -um; cf. finis.

nummus, -ī, m., *money, coin.*

aureus, -a, -um, *gold.*

tālea, -ae, f., *bar.*

ferreus, -a, -um, *iron.*

exāminō, I, *weigh.*

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.*

1. quōs nātōs (esse): subject
of prōditum (esse): transl.,
*whose origin on the island itself is
handed down, they say, by tradi-
tion.*

2. handed down.

3. Sc. incolitur.

4. plumbum album: *white
lead, here tin.*

album in mediterrāneis regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed eius exigua¹ est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cuiusque generis ut in Galliā est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et ānserem gustāre fās² nōn putant; haec tamen alunt³ animī voluptātisque⁴ causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remissiōribus frīgoribus.⁵

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cuius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Huius lateris alter⁶ angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs **appelluntur**, ad orientem sōlem, inferior⁷ ad meridiem⁸ spectat. Hoc latus pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum⁹ vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia ĩnsula, dīmidio minor, ut 15 exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trāsmīssus atque¹⁰ ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est ĩnsula, quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs obiectae¹¹ ĩnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus ĩnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt¹² diēs continuōs

albus, -a, -um, *white*.

mediterrāneus, -ā, -um; cf. medius + terra.

aes, aeris, n., *copper*.

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech tree*.

abiēs, abietis, f., *fir tree*.

lepus, leporis, m., *a hare*.

gallīna, -ae, f., *a hen*.

ānser, ānseris, m., *a goose*.

gustō, i, *taste*.

temperātus, -a, -um, *mild*.

remissus, -a, -um, *moderate*.

triquetrus, -a, -um, *triangular*.

angulus, -ī, m., *angle*.

appellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum; cf. pellō.

occidēns, occidentis, *falling, setting*.

dīmidius, -a, -um, *divided in the middle*; cf. dī + medius. Here a subst., *half*.

trāsmīssus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.

1. *limited*.

2. *right*.

3. *raise*.

4. *pleasure*.

5. *the cold*.

6. *the one*.

7. Correlative with *alter*.

8. *south*.

9. *the second (side)*.

10. *as*.

11. Sc. *esse*.

12. *have written*.

xxx sub brūmam esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percon-
tātiōnibus¹ reperiēbāmus, nisi certīs ex aquā² mēnsūris
breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus.
Huius est longitūdō³ lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō,
5 dcc mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui
partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus alter
maximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hoc mīlium passuum
dccc in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īn-
sula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium passuum.
10 14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī quī
Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, ne-
que multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interi-
ōrēs plērique frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne
vivunt pellibusque sunt vestitī. Omnēs vērō sē Britanni
15 vitrō inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque
hōc horribiliōrēs sunt in pugnā aspectū; capillōque⁴
sunt prōmissō atque omnī parte⁴ corporis rāsā praeter
caput et labrum superius.

brūma, -ae, f., *shortest day* (for
brevissima diēs), *midwinter*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.

mēnsūra, -ae, f., *measure, meas-
urement*.

vīciēs, adv., *twenty times*; cf.
vīginti.

hūmānus, -a, -um, *refined; civil-
ized*.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, *plant,
sow*.

lac, lactis, n., *milk*.

carō, carnis, n., *flesh*.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, victum, *live*.

vestiō, 4, *clothe*.

vitrum, -ī, n., *wood* (a plant used
in dyeing).

inficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *put on,
stain*.

caeruleus, -a, -um, *sky-like, i.e.
blue*.

color, colōris, m., *color*.

horribilis, -e, *dreadful*.

aspectus, -ūs, m., *appearance*.

capillus, -ī, m., *hair*.

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let
grow*.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsum, *shave*.

labrum, -ī, n., *lip*.

1. *inquiries*.

2. Here refers to the "water-
clock," shaped like an hourglass.

3. Cf. *longus*.

4. Ablatives of description.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 15-23

The Britons engage the Romans in several battles, but are defeated in each instance. Cassivellaunus changes his tactics from pitched battles to harassing the Romans, but, influenced by the desertion of many tribes, finally submits.

Caesar quarters his army among various tribes for the winter.

24. Subductis nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-
brivae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā prop-
ter siccitatēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter
ac¹ superiōribus annīs exercitum in hibernīs collocāre
5 legiōnēsq̄ in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus
ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alte-
ram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōs-
ciō quaestōrī; quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in
cōfiniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Belgiō col-
10 locāvit; his M. Crassum quaestōrem et L. Munātium Plan-
cum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem,
quam proximē trāns Padum cōscripserat, et cohortēs
quinque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars maxima est inter
Mosam ac Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et
15 Catuvolcī erant, misit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabī-
num et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit.
Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae
reī frūmentāriae sēsē medērī posse existimāvit. Atque
hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hiberna, praeter eam²
20 quam L. Rōsciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem

peragō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, accom-
plish, finish, hold.

prōveniō; cf. veniō.

distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtum,
assign, distribute.

cōfinium, -ī, n., neighborhood,
locality.

medeor, -ērī, —, with dative,
remedy.

quiētus, -a, -um, calm.

1. than.

2. Sc. legiōnem.

dūcendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, **quoad** legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hiberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōstituit.

An especial friend of Caesar is killed.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cuius maiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar prō eius virtūte atque in sē benevolentīā, quod in omnibus bellis singulārī eius operā fuerat ūsus, maiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīci¹ palam multis² ex cīvitāte auctōribus³ 10 interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod⁴ ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgīo celeriter in Carnutēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque⁵ operā⁶ cōgnōverit Tasgetium interfectum, 15 hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus lēgātis quaestōribusque quibus legiōnēs trādiderat certior factus est in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis⁷ esse mūnītum.

The Eburones attack the Roman camp.

26. Diēbus circiter xv quibus in hiberna ventum est, 20 initium repentinī tumultūs⁸ ac dēfectiōnis⁹ ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, quī, cum¹⁰ ad finēs rēgnī suī

quoad, until.

benevolentia, -ae, f.; cf. bene + volō.

rēgnō, 1, reign.

palam, openly.

impulsus, -ūs, m., instigation.

comprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -prehensum, catch, arrest.

1. Cf. amīcus.

2. multis . . . auctōribus: abl. abs.

3. promoters.

4. quod . . . pertinēbat: because many were involved.

5. Has hōs for its antecedent.

6. Modifies interfectum.

7. Dative.

8. uprising.

9. revolt.

10. Concessive.

Sabinō Cottaque praestō¹ fuissent frūmentumque in hiberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiis impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressis lignātōribus magnā manū ad castra oppugnanda vērērunt. Cum
 5 celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque ascendissent atque, ūnā ex parte Hispānis equitibus ēmissis, equestri proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppugnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt utī aliquī² ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret:
 10 Habēre sēsē quae dē rē commūnī dicere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minui posse spērārent.

Ambiorix at a conference advises the Romans to withdraw.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius, eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūrī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū³ Caesaris ad
 15 Ambiorīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud⁴ quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiis plūrimū eī⁵ cōnfītērī⁶ dēbēre, quod eius operā stipendiō liberātus esset quod Aduatucīs, finitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī⁷ et filius et frātris filius
 20 ā Caesare remissī essent, quōs Aduatuci obsidum numerō missōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnis tenuis-

praestō, adv., *at hand, ready, in readiness.*

concitō, I, *arouse.*

lignātōr, lignātōris, m., *wood-cutter.*

contrōversia, -ae, f., *quarrel.*

missus, -ūs, m.; cf. mittō.

cōnfiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *confess.*

liberō, I, *free.*

1. praestō fuissent: *they had offered their services.*

2. Singular.

3. missū Caesaris: *sent by Caesar.*

4. apud quōs: *in their presence.*

5. Caesar.

6. The main verb in indir. discourse.

7. Ambiorix,

sent; neque id quod fēcerit dē oppugnātiōne castrōrum aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse eiusmodi imperia ut nōn minus habēret iūris¹ in sē multitudō quam ipse in multitudinem.

5 Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentināe Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī² resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperitus³ rērum ut suis cōpiis populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfidat. Sed esse Galliae commūne

10 cōnsilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallis negāre⁴ potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī libertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus⁵ quoniam

15 prō⁶ pietāte satisfēcirit,⁷ habēre nunc sē ratiōnem⁸ officiī prō beneficiis Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitio ut suae ac militum salūtī cōnsulat. Magnam manum Germānōrum conductam⁹ Rhēnum trānsisse; hanc affore¹⁰ biduō. Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium¹¹

20 velintne, priusquam finitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hibernis milites aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēducere, quōrum alter milia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iis absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūre

coāctus, -ūs, m.; cf. cōgō.

porrō, furthermore.

humilitās, humilitātis, f., weakness.

adeō, to such an extent.

recuperō, I, recover.

pietās, pietātis, f., patriotism, loyalty.

1. power.

2. Cf. coniūrō.

3. Cf. peritus.

4. refuse.

5. Gauls.

6. as to.

7. appeased.

8. ratiōnem officiī: regard for his duty.

9. hired.

10. would be here.

11. cōnsilium velintne: it was their business (to consider) whether they wished.

iūrandō cōfirmāre, tūtum sē iter per suōs finēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōsulere,¹ quod hibernis levētur, et Caesarī prō eius meritis grātiā referre.¹ Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

The members of the council disagree.

5 28. Arpinēius et Iūnius quae audierant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illi repentinā rē perturbāti, etsī ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn negligenda existimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem ignōbilem atque **humilem** Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō
10 bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum.² Itaque ad cōsiliū rem dēferunt, magnaue inter eōs³ existit contrōversia.⁴ L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hibernis iniussū⁵ Caesaris discēden-
15 dum existimābant; quantāsvīs Ambiorīgis magnās etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītis hibernis docēbant; rem⁶ esse testimōniō,⁷ quod primum hostium impetum multis ultrō vulneribus illātis fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximis
20 hibernis et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius⁸ quam auctōre hoste dē summis rēbus capere cōsiliū?

levō, 1, *lighten, relieve.*

ignōbilis, -e; cf. nōbilis.

humilis, -e, *obscure.*

existō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, *arise.*

quantusvīs, quantavīs, quantumvīs; cf. quantus + volō.

postrēmō, *finally, lastly, in conclusion.*

1. Progressive present.

2. *to be believed.*

3. *i.e.* the councilors.

4. *dispute.*

5. *without the order.*

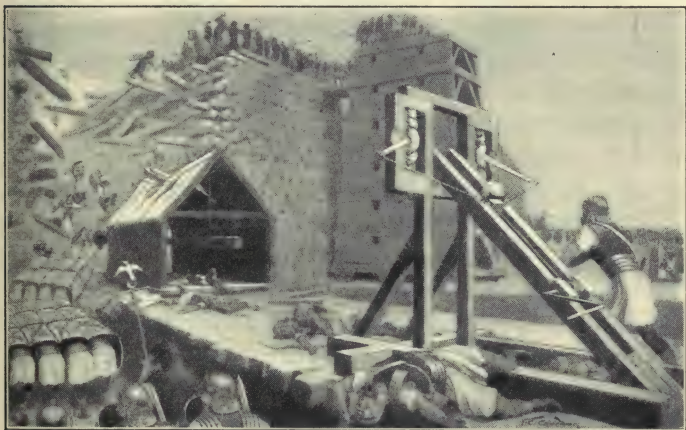
6. Refers to the quod clause.

7. *proof.*

8. *more disgraceful.*

Titurius expresses his opinion.

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat,¹ cum maiōrēs manūs hostium adiūctīs² Germānīs convēnis sent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem.
- 5 Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliā; neque aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetī cōsiliū fuisse³ cap-



Obsidio

tūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, si ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī⁴ ad castra ventūrōs. Sēsē⁵ nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre; subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī⁶ Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās

sērō, late, too late.

1. *shouted.*

2. Cf. *iungō.*

3. *fuisse captūrōs*: *would have adopted.*

4. Objective genitive.

5. *sēsē . . . spectāre*: *he was not considering the enemy as his authority, but was looking at the facts.*

6. *a source of grief.*

victōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliis acceptis sub
populi Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā rei
militāris exstinctā. Postrēmō quis hoc¹ sibi² persuādēret,
sine certā spē Ambiorīgem ad eiusmodi cōnsilium
5 dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in³ utramque partem
esse tūtā: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum periculō ad
proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum
Germānis cōsentiret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam
salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentirent
10 cōnsilium quem habēre⁴ exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns
periculum, at certē longinquā **obsidiōne** famēs esset
timenda.

Sabinus disclaims responsibility.

30. Hāc in⁵ utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum
ā Cottā primisque ōrdinibus ācritē resisterētur, 'Vincite,'⁶
15 inquit,⁷ 'sī ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut
magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit,
'quī gravissimē ex⁸ vōbīs mortis periculō terrear; hī⁹
sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem repos-

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

exstinguō, -ere, -stīnxī, -stīnctum,
destroy.

dēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum,
descend, resort.

dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēsum,
disagree.

exitus, -ūs, m., *outcome.*

obsidiō, obsidiōnis, f., *siege.*

disputātiō, disputātiōnis, f.; cf.
putō.

clārus, -a, -um, *clear, loud.*

vōs, vestrum or vestrī, plu. of tū,
you.

terreō, 2; cf perterreō.

sapiō, -ere, sapivī, —, *under-*
stand.

1. *of this.*

2. Refers to quis.

3. *in utramque partem: for*
either contingency.

4. Infinitive is used because
the question here is equivalent
to a statement.

5. *in utramque partem: on*
either side.

6. *have your own way.*

7. *said.*

8. *ex vōbīs: used for a partit.*
gen. with quī.

9. *i.e. militēs.*

cent, quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs coniūctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant,¹ nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō² aut famē intereant.'

Sabinus prevails.

5 **31.** Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt³ utrumque⁴ et ōrant nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: Facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant ac probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salū-
10 tem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat⁵ Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. **Prōnūntiātur** primā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset,
15 quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Primā lūce sic ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut⁶ quibus esset persuāsum nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō cōn-
20 silium datum, longissimō agmine maximisque impēdi-
mentīs.

repscō, -ere, —, —; cf. poscō.

perendinus, -a, -um, *after to-morrow.*

relēgō, 1, *send away.*

intereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, *perish.*

cōnsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, *rise in a body.*

dissēnsiō, dissēnsiōnis, f.; cf. sentiō.

prōnūntiō, 1, *declare.*

circumspiciō; cf. perspicīō.

instrūmentum, -ī, n., *tool, equipment.*

excōgitō, 1, *think out.*

languor, languōris, m., *weariness.*

1. sustineant (et) nōn intereant: *would bear (and) would not perish.*

2. sword.

3. they grasped by the hand.

4. Cotta and Sabinus.

5. dat manūs: *yielded.*

6. ut, etc.: *as (men) who had been persuaded that the plan had been offered.*

Sabinus and Cotta are attacked.

32. At hostēs, posteaquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō¹ in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā milibus passuum circiter duōbus, Rōmānōrum adventum expectābant, et, cum sē² maior pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīisset, ex utrāque parte eius vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque iniquissimō nostrīs³ locō proelium committere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked by the Eburones.

10 33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvidisset, trepidāre⁴ et concursāre⁴ cohortēsque dispōnere,⁴ haec⁵



Signa

tamen ipsa timidē atque ut⁶ eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iis accidere cōsuēvit quī in ipsō negōtiō cōsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat; et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperātōris et in pugnā militis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis nōn facile per sē omnia obīre et quid quōque locō faciendum esset prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiārī ut

convallis, convallis, f., *valley*.
trepidō, 1, *run about, become confused*.

concurso, 1, *frequentative of concurrō*.
obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *perform*.

1. *in two bodies*.

2. sē dēmīisset: *had gone*.

3. Dative.

4. Historical infinitives.

5. Sc. fēcīt.

6. *in such a way that*.

impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōsisterent. Quod cōsiliū etsī in eiusmodī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs militibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pugnam alacriōrēs effēcit, 5 quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō militēs ab signīs discēderent, quaeque¹ quisque eōrum cārissima habēret ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properāret et clāmōre et flētū² omnia complē- 10 rentur.

Battle plan of Ambiorix.

34. At barbaris cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt nē quis ab locō discēderet: Illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victoriā 15 posita existimārent.³ Nostrī tametsī⁴ ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns⁵ quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte magnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet ut procul⁶ tēla 20 coniciant neu propius accēdant et quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint cēdant (levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil his nocērī posse), rūsus sē⁷ ad signa recipientēs insequantur.

incommodē, synonym, male.

dēspērātiō, dēspērātiōnis, f.; cf. spērō.

necesse, indecl. adj., necessary.

cārus, -a, -um, dear.

arripō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize quickly.

proinde, therefore.

1. -que connects discēderent and properāret.

2. Cf. fleō.

3. Subj. representing imperat. in direct discourse.

4. although.

5. as often as.

6. from a distance.

7. Object of recipientēs: to whom does this refer?

The Romans are defeated with fearful slaughter.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe¹ excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam² partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipere.

5 Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde erant prōgressī revertī coeperant, et³ ab iīs quī cesserant et³ ab iīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquiēbātur neque ab tantā multitudīne coniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Ta-

10 men tot⁴ incommodīs⁵ cōnflctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et magnā parte diēi cōnsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam pugnārētur, nihil quod ipsis esset indignum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,⁶ quī superiōre annō primum⁷ pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et

15 magnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā⁸ trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, eiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pugnāns, dum circumventō filiō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātur.

praeceptum, -ī, n., *order*.

quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam, *any*.

refugiō; cf. fugiō.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand, take one's stand*.

cōnflctō, I, *break down*.

indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy*.

femur, femoris, n., *thigh*.

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *pierce*; cf. iaciō.

subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *go to help*.

adhortor, I; cf. hortor.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face*.

funda, -ae, f., *sling*.

1. *circle*.

2. eam partem: *i.e.* of the Roman army.

3. *both . . . and*.

4. *so many*.

5. *disasters*.

6. Dative of reference.

7. primum pīlum: *first division*.

8. *javelin*.

An interview with Ambiorix is sought.

36. His rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspēxisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompēium, ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondet : Si velit
 5 sēcum colloquī, licēre ; spērāre sē ā multitudine impetrārī¹ posse quod ad militum salūtem pertineat ; ipsi² vērō nihil nocitum irī, inque eam rem sē³ suam fidem interpōnere. Ille⁴ cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, si videātur, pugnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige unā colloquantur :
 10 spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat⁵ atque in eō persevērat.

Sabinus is slain in conference, and his army is destroyed.

37. Sabīnus quōs⁶ in⁷ praesentiā tribūnōs militum circum sē habēbat et primōrum ordinum centuriōnēs sē sequī
 15 iubet, et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperātum facit suisque ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō sermō ab Ambiorige instituitur, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, spare.

commūnicō, I, confer.

cōsultō, adv., on purpose.

sermō, sermōnis, m., conversation.

ululātus, -ūs, m., shout, outcry, yell.

1. impetrārī posse: the subject is quod . . . pertineat.

2. Titurius.

3. sē . . . interpōnere: he pledged his honor.

4. Titurius.

5. said . . . not.

6. quōs tribūnōs = eōs tribūnōs quōs.

7. in praesentiā = illō tempore.

factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnāns interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magnā multitudine hostium premerētur,
 5 **aquilam** intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occiditur. Illi aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī incertis¹ itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hiberna perveni-
 10 unt atque eum dē rēbus gestis certiōrem faciunt.

The Aduatuci and Nervii are persuaded to join the revolt.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant eius rēgnō finitimī, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditātumque sē subsequi iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Adua-
 15 tucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit hortāturque nē suī² in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī Rōmānōs prō iis quās accēperint iniūriis occāsionem dimittant; interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs interisse³ dēmōnstrat: Nihil esse⁴ ne-
 20 gōtiī subitō oppressam⁵ legiōnem quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interfici; sē ad eam rem profitetur adiūtorem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nervii persuādet.

aquilifer, -ī, m.; cf. aquila + ferō.

aquila, -ae, f., eagle.

ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlapsus sum, *escape*.

peditātus, -ūs, m.; cf. pedes, and also eques, equitātus.

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *offer*.

adiūtōr, adiūtōris, m.; cf. iuvō.

1. *chosen at random.*

2. suī liberandī atque ulciscendī: modifies occāsionem; the chance of freeing themselves and of punishing.

3. *perished.*

4. The subject is legiōnem . . . interfici.

5. oppressam interfici: to surprise and slay.

With reënforcements they attack Cicero's camp.

39. Itaque cōfestim dīmissis nūntiis ad Ceutronēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum¹ imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs, cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, 5 nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūrī morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūlli mīlitēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventis magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatuci atque 10 hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptōs victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Cicero prepares for a vigorous defense.

15 40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne litterae magnīs prōpositis praemiis iis,² quī pētulissent; obsessis³ omnibus viīs missi intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā māteriā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant turrēs admodum⁴ cxx excitantur⁵ incrēdibili celeritāte, quae 20 deesse operi vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō maiōribus coāctis cōpiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ā nostris eādē ratiōne quā pridīē resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps⁶ fit diēbus. Nūlla pars

advolō, 1, *hurry.*

fāma, -ae, f., *report, rumor, news.*

lignātiō, lignātiōnis, f., *getting wood.*

adipiscor, -ī, adeptus sum, *gain.*

1. *i.e.* the Nervii.

2. Sc. nūntiis.

3. *blocked.*

4. *fully.*

5. *were erected.*

6. *in succession.*

nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēi oppugnātiōnem opus sunt noctū comparantur; multae praeustae sudēs, magnus mūrālium pilōrum
 5 numerus instituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōricaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ultrō¹ militum concursū² ac vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

Cicero refuses to be drawn out of camp.

10 41. Tum ducēs principēsque Nerviorum, quī aliquem sermōnis³ aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: Omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum
 15 trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabinī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant fideī⁴ faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab iīs praesidii spērent quī suis rēbus diffidant; sēsē

quiēs, quiētis, f., *rest.*

praeūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ustum, *burn at the end.*

sudis, sudis, f., *stake.*

mūrālis, -e, *of a wall, wall.*

contabulo, 1, *heighten, build up in stories.*

pinna, -ae, f., *battlement.*

lōrica, -ae, f., *parapet.*

crātēs, crātis, f., *wickerwork.*

attexō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *weave to, attach.*

tenuis, -e, *delicate.*

valētūdō, valētūdinis, f.; cf. valeō.

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *add.*

ostentō, 1, frequentative of ostendō.

errō, 1, *to be mistaken.*

diffido, -ere, -fisis sum, *have no faith in.*

1. *even.*

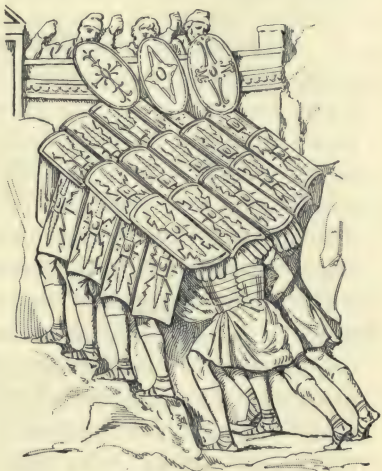
2. concursū ac vōcibus: *by the action and entreaties.*

3. sermōnis aditum: *speak-*

ing acquaintance, access to.

4. fideī faciendae causā: *for the sake of proving their truthfulness.*

tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum
 animō, ut nihil nisi hiberna recūsant atque hanc invete-
 rāscere¹ cōsuētūdinem² nōlint; licēre illīs incolumibus
 per sē ex hibernis discēdere et quāscumque in partēs
 5 velint sine metū³ proficisci. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo
 respondet: Nōn esse
 cōsuētūdinem populī
 Rōmānī accipere ab
 hoste armātō condiciō-
 10 nem; sī ab armīs discē-
 dere velint, sē adiūtore
 ūtantur lēgātōsque ad
 Caesarem mittant;
 spērāre sē prō eius⁴
 15 iūstitiā quae petierint
 impetrātūrōs.⁵



Testudo

The Nervii lay siege to the camp.

42. Ab hāc spē re-
 pulsī Nervii vāllō pe-
 dum x et fossā pedum
 20 xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum
 cōsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē
 exercitū⁶ nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur; sed, nūllā⁷
 ferrāmentōrum cōpiā quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea,
 gladiīs caespitēs⁸ circumcidere, manibus sagulisque ter-

ferrāmentum, -ī, n., *iron tool*.

circumcidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum;

cf. caedō.

sagulum, -ī, n., *military cloak*.

1. *become fixed*.

2. *i.e.* of wintering.

3. *fear*.

4. *i.e.* Caesar.

5. Sc. eōs as subject.

6. *i.e.* of the Romans.

7. nūllā . . . cōpiā: abl. abs.

8. *sods*.

ram exhaurire cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum
 multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mī-
 lium passuum III in circuitū mūnitiōnem perfēcērunt.
 Reliquīs diēbus turrēs ad altitudinem vālli, falcēs testū-
 5 dinēsque, quās idem captīvī docuerant, parāre ac facere
 coepērunt.

The Nervii make a determined attack, but are sturdily resisted.

43. Septimō oppugnātiōnis diē maximō coortō ventō
 ferventēs fūsili ex argillā glandēs fundis¹ et fervefacta
 iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentis erant tēctae,
 10 iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehendē-
 runt² et ventī magnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum
 distulērunt. Hostēs maximō clāmōre, sicutī partā iam
 atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs testūdīnēsque agere et
 scālis vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum
 15 virtūs atque ea praesentia³ animī fuit ut,⁴ cum⁵ undi-
 que flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlōrum multitūdine
 premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs for-
 tūnās cōnflagrāre intēllegerent, nōn modo dē vāllō dēcē-
 deret nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac
 20 tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hīc diēs
 nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit

exhauriō, -īre, -hausī, -haustum,

drain off, carry off.

falx, falcis, f., *hook.*

coerior, -irī, -ortus sum; cf. orior.

ferveō, -ēre, fervuī, —, *glow.*

fūsilis, -e, *molten.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.*

glāns, glandis, f., *bullet.*

fervefaciō; cf. ferveō + faciō.

iaculum, -ī, n., *dart.*

casa, -ae, f., *hut.*

strāmentum, -ī, n., *thatch.*

tēgō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover.*

pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *gain.*

scālae, -ārum, f., *ladder.*

flamma, -ae, f., *fire.*

torreō, -ēre, torruī, tostum, *scorch.*

cōnflagrō, ī, *be on fire.*

1. *with slings;* modifies
 iacere.

2. *caught.*

3. *presence.*

4. Introduces dēcēderet, etc.

5. Concessive.

ēventum, ut eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerā-
rētur atque interficerētur, ut¹ sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstipā-
verant recessumque primīs ultimī nōn dabant. Paulum
quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō turri adāctā
5 et contingente² vāllum, tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex
eō quō stābant³ locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remō-
vērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs,⁴ sī introīre vellent, vo-
cāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredi ausus est nēmō. Tum
ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis dēturbāti,⁵ turreisque
10 succēnsa est.

The rivalry of two brave centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,
quī iam primīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et
L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās⁶ habē-
bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annis dē locō⁷
15 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum
ācerrimē ad mūnitiōnēs pugnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,' in-
quit,⁸ 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis
exspectās? Hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.'
Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā⁹ mūnitiōnēs, quaeque
20 pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, in eam irrumpit.
Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed om-

cōnstipō, I, *crowd closely*.
recessus, -ūs, m., *chance for re-
treat*; cf. re-cēdō.
introeō; cf. intrō, *within* + eō.
dēturbō, I, *drive down, beat
down, dislodge*.

succendō, -ere, -cendī, -cēsum,
set on fire.
anteferō; cf. ferō.
simultās, simultātis, f., *rivalry*.
tuus, -a, -um, *thy, your*.
irrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *rush*.

1. *inasmuch as*.

2. *touching*.

3. *stood*.

4. *Accusative*.

5. dēturbāti (sunt): sc. hostēs

as subject.

6. *disputes*.

7. *rank*.

8. *said he*.

9. *outside of*.

nium veritus exīstimātiōnem¹ subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs **immittit** atque ūnum ex multitudīne prōcurrentem trāicit;² quō percussō et exanimātō, hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūni-
 5 versī³ tēla coniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfigitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō **dēfigi-**
tur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cō-
 nantī⁴ dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs
 circumstant. Succurrit inimicus illī Vorēnus et labō-
 10 rantī subvenit.⁵ Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis
 multitudō convertit; illum verūtō trānsfīxum⁶ arbitrantur.
 Vorēnus gladiō rem comminus⁷ gerit atque ūnō interfectō
 reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īstat, in locum
 dēlātus inferiōrem concidit. Huic rūsus circumventō
 15 subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs complūri-
 bus interfectis summā cum laude⁸ sēsē intrā mūnitiōnēs
 recipiunt. Sic fortūna in contentiōne et certāmine
 utrumque⁹ **versāvit** ut alter alterī inimicus auxiliō salūti-
 que esset, neque dīiudicārī posset uter utrī virtūte
 20 antefendus vidērētur.

mediocris, -e, *moderate.*

immittō; cf. mittō.

percutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum,
pierce through.

prōtegō; cf. tegō.

prōgredior; cf. ēgredior.

verūtum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

balteus, -ī, m., *sword belt.*

dēfigō, -ere, -fīxī, -fīxum, *fix*

firmly, fasten.

vāgīna, -ae, f., *sheath.*

succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum, *run*
to help.

concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, *fall.*

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both.*

certāmen, certāminis, n., *contest.*

versō, 1, frequentative of vertō.

dīiudicō, 1, *decide.*

1. Cf. exīstimō.

2. *pierced.*

3. *in a body.*

4. Sc. eī: lit. *to him trying.*

5. *came to the aid of.*

6. *pierced through.*

7. *at close quarters.*

8. *applause.*

9. *(the relative position of)*
each.

Caesar is informed of the attack.

45. Quantō¹ erat in diēs gravior atque asperior op-
pugnātiō, et maximē quod magnā parte militum cōfectā
vulneribus rēs² ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat,
tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiique ad Caesarem mittē-
5 bantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōspectū nostrō-
rum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus
Nervius, nōmine Verticō, locō³ nātus honestō,⁴ quī ā
primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque
eī fidem praestiterat. Hic servō⁵ spē libertātis magnis-
10 que persuādet praemiis ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat.
Hās ille in iaculō⁶ illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs
sine ūllā suspiciōne versātus⁷ ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab
eō dē periculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Caesar prepares relief for Cicero.

46. Caesar, acceptīs litterīs hōrā circiter xī diēi, statim
15 nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum quaestōrem mittit,
cuius hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum xxv; iubet
mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē ve-
nīre. Exit cum⁸ nūntiō Crassus. Alterum⁹ ad C. Fabium
lēgātum mittit ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat,
20 quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, si rei
pūblīcae commodō facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs

asper, aspera, asperum, *violent*.
dēprehendō, -ere, -prehendī, -pre-
hēnsūm, *catch*.

intus, *adv., within*.
illigō, *1, tie to or into, fasten on*
or in.

1. quantō . . . tantō : *lit. by how much . . . by so much; freely, the . . . the.*

2. *the force.*

3. *station.*

4. *honorable.*

5. *slave.*

6. in iaculō : *the shaft of the javelin was doubtless hollow and the letter hidden inside.*

7. *after mingling.*

8. cum nūntiō : *on the receipt of the dispatch.*

9. *a second.*

Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter cccc ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

Caesar places Crassus in charge of the winter quarters at Samarobriua. Labienus remains in his own camp.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassi
 5 adventū certior factus eō diē milia passuum xx prōcēdit.
 Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit,
 quod ibi impedimenta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, lit-
 terās pūblicās, frūmentumque omne quod eō tolerandae¹
 hiemis causā dēvēxerat relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperā-
 10 tum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne
 occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium
 cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnis-
 sent, veritus nē, sī ex hibernīs fugae similem profectiō-
 nem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset,
 15 praesertim quōs² recentī victōriā efferrī scīret, litterās
 Caesarī remittit quantō cum periculō legiōnem ex hiber-
 nīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnībus per-
 scribit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās
 Trēverōrum tria milia passuum longē ab suis castrīs
 20 cōnsēdisse.

A dispatch is sent to Cicero.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō eius probātō, etsī opīniōne³ trium
 legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com-

antecursor, antecursōris, m., *fore-
runner.*

dēvehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum, *carry
away.*

interitus, -ūs, m., = mors.

caedēs, caedis, f., *slaughter.*

similis, -e, *like.*

perscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum,
describe.

recidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *fall
back, relapse, sink, return, be
reduced.*

1. *enduring.*

2. quōs scīret = cum eōs scīret.

3. *expectation*; ablative of sep-
aration.

mūnī salūtī auxīlium in celeritātē pōnēbat. Venit mag-
 nīs itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs
 cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in
 periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis mag-
 5 nīs praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dē-
 ferat. Hanc Graecīs cōscrip̄tam litterīs mittit, nē
 interceptā epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōsilia cōgnō-
 scantur. Sī adire nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam¹ cum
 epistulā ad āmentum dēligātā² intrā mūnitiōnēs castrō-
 10 rum abiciat. In litterīs scribit sē cum legiōnibus duābus
 profectum celeriter affore;³ hortātur ut pristinam virtū-
 tem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praecep-
 tum,⁴ trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit
 neque ā nostris bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam
 15 milite cōspicitur, dēmp̄ta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille
 perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs
 laetitīā afficit. Tum fūmī⁵ incendiōrum procul⁶ vidē-
 bantur : quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum
 expulit.

The Gauls leave Cicero and march against Caesar.

20 49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-
 quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec
 erant armāta circiter milia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte
 Gallum alium ab eōdem Verticōne quem sup̄rā dēmōn-

epistula, -ae, f., = litterae.

āmentum, -ī, n., *thong*.

adhaerēscō, -ere, -haesi, -haesum,
stick.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmp̄tum,
take down.

perlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *read*
through.

recitō, ī, *read aloud*.

laetitia, -ae, f., *pleasure, delight,*
gladness.

incendium, -ī, n., *fire*.

1. *javelin*.

2. Cf. *illigō*.

3. *would be on hand*.

4. *ordered*.

5. *smoke*.

6. *at a distance*.

strāvimus repetit¹ quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet iter cautē diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter mediā nocte
 5 Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspiciātur. Erat magnī periculī rēs cum tantulīs² cōpiīs iniquō locō dimi-
 10 cāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum³ dē celeritāte existimābat. Cōnsidit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec,⁴ etsi erant exigua⁵ per sē, vix hominum⁶ mīlium **septem**, praesertim nūllis cum impedimentis,
 15 tamen angustiis⁷ viārum quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus⁸ veniat. Interim speculātōribus⁹ in omnēs partēs dīmissis explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

Caesar under pretense of fear entices the Gauls to his own ground.

50. Eō diē parvulis¹⁰ equestribus proeliis ad aquam
 20 factis utrique sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī,¹¹ quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, expectābant;

admoneō, 2; cf. moneō.
 cautē, cautiously.

rīvus, -ī, m., stream.
 septem, indecl. num. adj., seven.

1. Cf. petō.
2. such small.
3. Lit. it might be slackened from.
4. Sc. castra, the obj. of contrahit.
5. small.
6. hominum mīlium septem:

gen. of description with haec (castra).

7. angustiis viārum: by making the streets narrow.

8. in the eyes of the enemy.

9. spies.

10. slight.

11. Sc. sēsē . . . continent.

Caesar,¹ si forte² timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere posset, ut citrā vallem prō castris proeliō contenderet; si id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātis itineribus minōre cum periculō vallem rīvumque trānsiret.

5 Primā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō³ equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūniri portāsque obstruī atque in his administrandis rēbus quam maximē

10 concursārī⁴ et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

Caesar attacks and utterly routs the Gauls.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitāti cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō. locō cōstituunt, nostris vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductis propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praecōnibus-

15 que circummissis prōnūtiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsire, sine periculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Ac sic nostrōs contempsērunt, ut, obstrūctis in speciem portis singulis ōrdinibus caespitem,⁵ quod eā⁶ nōn posse intrō-

20 rumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat,

ēliciō, -ere, -licuī, -licitum, *draw out, entice.*

obstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *block.*

praecō, praecōnis, m., *herald.*

circummittō; cf. mittō.

contemnō, -ere, -tempsī, -temp-
tum, *despise.*

intrōrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,
break in.

1. Sc. sēsē . . . continet.

2. *by chance.*

3. *on purpose.*

4. Cf. currō: concursārī and

agī are impersonal.

5. *sods.*

6. Sc. viā, *i.e.* by way of the gates.

sic uti omninō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex iis numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exuit.¹

Caesar proceeds to Cicero's camp and congratulates the officers and men on their bravery.

52. Longius prōsequi veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant, omnibus suis incolumibus eōdem diē ad
 5 Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, testudinēs mūnitionēsque hostium admirātur; prōductā legiōne cōgnōscit nōn decimum² quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex his omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō
 10 eius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillatim tribūnōsque militum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captivīs cōgnōscit. Posterō diē cōntiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, milites
 15 cōnsolātur et cōnfirmit; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc³ aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō⁴ deōrum immortalium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō⁵ neque hostibus⁶ diūtina laetitia neque ipsis longior dolor relinquātur.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 53-58

Because many Gallic tribes seem on the verge of rebellion, Caesar decides to winter in Gaul. Under Indutiomarus the Gauls plan to attack the camp of Labienus. They are lured to the very walls of the camp, and then attacked and completely routed.

collaudō, 1, *praise highly.*

ness, indiscretion.

cōntiō, cōntiōnis, f., *assembly.*

expiō, 1, *atone for.*

culpa, -ae, f., *fault.*

diūtīnus, -a, -um, *long-continued,*

temeritās, temeritātis, f., *rash-*

lasting.

1. *stripped.*

2. decimum quemque militem: *one soldier in ten.*

3. Abl. of cause.

4. beneficiō, virtūte: abls. of means.

5. *disaster.*

6. Dat. of reference.

LIBER SEXTUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-10

During the winter Caesar levies more troops in order to be ready for the expected uprising of the Gauls. In the early spring he lays waste the territory of the Nervii, and the Senones and the Carnutes submit — all of whom previously refused to come to a conference of Gallic tribes which Caesar had called. He then proceeds against the Menapii in the north, who have never been subdued, and receives their submission. Meanwhile Labienus engages in battle with the Treveri, and they surrender. That he may frighten the Suebi, who plan to join the Treveri, Caesar again crosses the Rhine, but finds that they have retreated into the deep forests.

Customs of the Gauls. Two factions.

II. Quoniam ad hunc locum¹ perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In Galliā nōn solum in omnibus cīvitatibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum principēs sunt quī summam auctōritātem eōrum² iūdicīō habēre existimantur, quōrum³ ad arbitrium⁴ iūdiciumque summa⁵ omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat.⁶ Idque eius⁷ rei causā antiquitus institūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret; suōs enim

egēō, -ēre, eguī, —, lack.

1. *point* (in the story).

2. *i.e.* Gallōrum.

3. Refers to party leaders.

4. *discretion*.

5. *final judgment*.

6. *is referred*.

7. *eius rei*: explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret*.

quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in¹ summā tōtius Galliae;² namque omnēs cīvitatēs dīvisae sunt in duās partēs.

By the help of the Romans, the Haeduans gain the ascendancy.

5 12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Haeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Haeduīs magnaēque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad
10 sē magnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque³ perdūxerant. Proeliis vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Haeduōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā⁴ antecesserant⁵ ut magnam partem clientium ab Haeduīs ad sē trādūcerent⁶ obsidēsque ab hīs prīncipum filiōs
15 acciperent, et pūblicē iūrāre⁷ cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliū initūrōs, et partem finitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtius prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus
20 infectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtiōne rērum, obsidibus Haeduīs⁸ redditīs, veteribus clientēlis restitutīs, novīs per Caesarem comparātīs,

clientēla, -ae, f., *dependency.*

iactūra, -ae, f., *a throwing, concession.*

tantum, *to such a degree.*

antecēdō; cf. cēdō.

īnficiō; cf. in (*not*) + faciō.

1. in summā: *in general.*

2. Pred. gen. of possession.

3. Cf. polliceor.

4. Cf. possum.

5. Sc. Sēquanī.

6. With the following four subjunctives denotes result after tantum . . . antecesserant.

7. Sc. prīncipēs as subject.

8. Dative.

quod¹ iī² quī sē ad eōrum³ amīcitiā aggregāverant meliōre condiōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūti⁴ vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dignitatēque amplificātā, Sēquanī principātum dīmiserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī
 5 successerant; quōs⁵ quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimicitias nullō modō cum Haeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī diligenter tuēbantur; ita et novam et repente⁶ collēctam⁷ auctōritātem tenē-
 10 bant. Eō tamen statū rēs erat, ut longē principēs Haeduī habērentur, secundum locum dignitātis Rēmī obtinērent.⁸

The condition of the common people and the power of the Druids.

13. In omni Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō⁹ sunt numerō atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs
 15 paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nullī adhibētur cōsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō¹⁰ aut magnitudine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus; quibus¹¹ in¹² hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs in servōs.
 20 Sed dē his duōbus generibus alterum est druidum,

aggregō, I, *attach*.

inimicitia, -ae, f.; cf. amicitia.

dicō, I, *give over*.

status, -ūs, m., *condition*.

tribūtum, -ī, n., *tax*.

dominus, -ī, m., *master*.

druidēs, -um, m., *the druids, priests*.

1. quod . . . vidēbant: tells the reason for novīs . . . comparātis.

2. Subject of vidēbant.

3. i.e. Haeduōrum.

4. enjoyed.

5. Subject of adaequāre.

6. suddenly.

7. acquired.

8. held.

9. aliquō numerō: of any account.

10. aere aliēnō: lit. by another's copper, i.e. debt.

11. Dat. of possession.

12. over.

alterum equitum. Illi rēbus dīvinis intersunt,¹ sacrificia publica ac privata prōcūrant, religiōnēs² interpretantur; ad eōs magnus adulescentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, magnōque hī³ sunt apud eōs⁴ honore. Nam
 5 ferē dē omnibus contrōversiis publicis privatisque cōstituunt, et, si quod est facinus⁵ admissum,⁶ si caedēs facta, si dē hērēditate, dē finibus contrōversia est, idem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōstituunt; si quī aut privatus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō⁷ nōn stetit, sacrificiis⁸ interdīcunt.⁸ Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum ac scelerātōrum habentur, hīs⁹ omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodi accipiant, neque iis petentibus iūs redditur
 15 neque honōs ūllus commūnicātur.¹⁰ Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctoritatem. Hōc mortuō¹¹ aut, si quī ex reliquis excellit dignitatē, succēdit, aut, si sunt plūrēs¹² parēs, suffrāgiō¹³ druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armis dē prīncipatū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in finibus

sacrificium, -ī, n., *a sacrifice.*

prōcūrō, I; cf. cūrō.

interpretor, I, *explain.*

hērēditās, hērēditātis, f., *an inheritance.*

dēcrētum, -ī, n., *decision.*

impius, -a, -um, *wicked.*

scelerātus, -a, -um, *criminal.*

dēfugiō; cf. fugiō.

contāgiō, contāgiōnis, f., *a touching, contact.*

excellō, -ere, —, —, = praestat.

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *vote.*

1. *are concerned with.*

2. *religious rites.*

3. = druidēs.

4. = plēbem.

5. *crime.*

6. *committed.*

7. dēcrētō nōn stetit: *does not abide by their decision.*

8. *forbid.*

9. Dative. Cf. Eng. *make way for.*

10. *is shared with.*

11. *dead.*

12. *several.*

13. Abl. of means with *contendunt.*

Carnutum, quae regiō tōtius Galliae media habetur, cōnsidunt¹ in locō cōsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētis iūdicīisque pārent.² Disciplīna³ in Britannīā reperta
 5 atque inde in Galliam trāslāta exīstimātur, et nunc quī diligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plērumque illō⁴ discendī causā proficiscuntur.

Doctrine of the Druids.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt. Tantīs excitāti praemiīs et
 10 suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī xx in disciplīnā permanent.⁵ Neque fās⁶ esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum⁷ in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicis
 15 privātisque ratiōnibus,⁸ Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgus disciplīnam⁹ efferrī velint, neque eōs quī discunt litterīs cōfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod¹⁰ ferē plērisque accidit, ut praesidiō¹¹ litterārum diligentiam
 20 in perdiscendō ac memoriā remittant. In primīs hoc¹²

cōsecrō, I, *make holy, dedicate, consecrate.*

trānsferō; cf. ferō.

parentēs, -um, m., *parents.*

versus, -ūs, m., *verse.*

ēdiscō, -ere, -didici, ———, *learn by heart.*

perdiscō; cf. ēdiscō.

1. *gather.*

2. *obey.*

3. *the system.*

4. *i.e. in Britanniam.*

5. Cf. maneō.

6. *right.*

7. *Concessive.*

8. *accounts.*

9. *doctrine.*

10. Explained by the clause
 ut . . . remittant.

11. *with the help.*

12. Explained by interīre and
 trānsīre.

volunt persuādēre, nōn interire¹ animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsire ad aliōs; atque hōc maximē ad virtūtem excitārī² putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sideribus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundi ac
5 terrārum magnitudīne, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortalīum vī ac potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The Knights.

15 15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus³ atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod⁴ ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotanni accidere solēbat, utī aut ipsī iniū-
10 riās inferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum⁵ ut quisque est genere cōpiisque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēs-
que habet. Hanc⁶ ūnam grātiā potentiāque nō-
vērunt.

Human sacrifices.

15 16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum⁷ dēdita religīonibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbis quīque in proeliis periculisque versantur aut
prō victimīs hominēs⁸ immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vo-
vent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur,

anima, -ae, f., *soul*.

sīdus, sideris, n., *star*.

mōtus, -ūs, m., *motion*.

mundus, -ī, m., *universe*.

disputō, ī, *discuss*.

iuventūs, iuventūtis, f., *youth*.

soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *be accus-*

tomed, be wont.

ambactus, -ī, m., *retainer*.

morbis, -ī, m., *disease*.

victima, -ae, f., *victim*.

immolō, ī, *sacrifice*.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtūm, *vow*.

administer, -trī, m., *attendant*.

1. *perish*.

2. Sc. hominēs as subject.

3. = opus.

4. Refers to bellum incidit.

5. eōrum ut quisque . . . ita plūrimōs: *the more famous each*

of them is . . . the more, etc.

6. hanc ūnam: *only this, i.e. no other*.

7. *much*.

8. Object of both immolant and immolātūrōs.

quod, prō vitā hominis nisi hominis vitā reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortalium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur; publicēque eiusdem generis habent¹ institūta sacrificia. Alii immānī magnitudīne simulācra² habent, quōrum
 5 contexta vīminibus³ membra⁴ vivīs hominibus complent; quibus succēnsis circumventi flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut in aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsi grātiōra⁵ dīs immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum eius generis cōpia de-
 10 ficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The gods of the Gauls.

17. Deōrum maximē Mercurium colunt;⁶ huius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium ferunt,⁷ hunc viārum atque itīnerum ducem,⁸ hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim maximam
 15 arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē his eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs⁹ habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia trādere,¹⁰

nūmen, nūminis, n., *divine will.*

plācō, i, *appease.*

immānis, -e, *enormous.*

simulācrum, -ī, *image, idol.*

contextō, -ere, -texuī, -textum, *plait.*

membrum, -ī, n., *limb.*

vīvus, -a, -um, *alive.*

fūrtum, -ī, n., *theft.*

latrōcinium, -ī, n., *robbery.*

noxia, -ae, f., *offense.*

innocēns, innocentis, *innocent.*

inventor, inventōris, m., *inventor.*

ars, artium, f., *skill, craft.*

quaestus, -ūs, m., *the gaining.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*

mercātūra, -ae, f., *trade.*

artificium, -ī, n., *handicraft.*

1. habent . . . sacrificia: *they have sacrifices established.*

2. i.e. idols in the shape of men.

3. *twigs.*

4. Object of complement.

5. *more pleasing.*

6. *worship.*

7. *they say.*

8. *guide.*

9. *tribes.*

10. *teaches.*

Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtē bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmīcāre cōstituērunt, ea quae bellō cēperint plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animalia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum
 5 cōferunt. Multis in civitatibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs¹ tumultōs locis cōsecrātis cōspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne² aut capta³ apud⁴ sē occultāre⁵ aut posita⁶ tollere audēret, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciātū cōstitutum est.

The reputed origin of the Gauls. Status of children.

10 18. Galli sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant⁷ idque ab druidibus prōditum⁸ dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant ut⁹ noctem diēs subsequātur. In
 15 reliquīs vitāe institūtis hōc ferē¹⁰ ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs liberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt ut mūnus¹¹ militiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adire nōn patiuntur, filiumque puerilī aetate in publicō in cōspectū patris assistere turpe¹² dūcunt.

caelestis, -e, *heavenly (being)*.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *control*.

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, *vow*.

animal, animālis, n., *animal*.

finiō, 4, *measure*.

nātālis, -e, *of birth*; with diēs, *birthday*.

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultum, *grow up*.

militia, -ae, f., *military service, warfare*.

puerilis, -e; cf. puer.

assistō, -ere, -stitī, —, *stand near*.

1. *piled up*.

2. *religious obligation*.

3. *i.e.* in war: sc. ea.

4. apud sē: *at his home*.

5. *hide*.

6. *i.e.* in sacred places.

7. *boast*.

8. *handed down*.

9. ut . . . subsequātur: *i.e.* the day began with sunset.

10. *chiefly*.

11. *duty*.

12. *disgraceful*; adj. agreeing with the inf. assistere.

Marriage and funeral customs.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus¹ dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suis bonis aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant.² Huius omnis pecūniae coniūctim ratiō³ habētur frūctūsque servantur⁴; uter eōrum vitā⁵ superāvit, ad eum pars utriusque cum frūctibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Virī in⁶ uxōrēs, sicutī in liberōs, vitae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater familiae illūstriore locō nātus dēcessit,⁷ eius propinquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspiciōnem vēnit, dē uxōribus in⁸ servilem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, ignī atque omnibus tormentis excruciatās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō⁹ cultū Gallōrum magnifica et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vivīs¹⁰ cordī fuisse arbitrantur in ignem inferunt, etiam animālia, ac paulō
15 suprā¹¹ hanc memoriam servi et clientēs quōs ab iis dilēctōs esse cōstābat, iūstis¹² fūnebris cōfectis, unā cremābantur.

dōs, dōtis, f., *dowry* (cf. dō).

aestimātiō, aestimātiōnis, f., *calculation, appraisal*.

coniūctim, *jointly*.

frūctus, -ūs, m., *profit*.

illūstris, -e, *distinguished*.

quaestiō, quaestiōnis, f.; cf. quaerō.

excruciō, I, *torture*.

fūnus, fūneris, n., *funeral*.

magnificus, -a, -um; cf. magnus + faciō.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, *expensive, costly*.

cor, cordis, n., *heart*.

diligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum = amō.

fūnebris, -e, *of a funeral*; plu. as a subst., *funeral rites*.

1. *wives*.

2. *unite*.

3. ratiō habētur: *an account is kept*.

4. *are saved*.

5. vitā superāvit: *has survived*. vitā is abl. of specification.

6. *over*.

7. = mortuus est.

8. in servilem modum: *i.e. by torture*.

9. *considering*.

10. vivīs . . . fuisse: *were dear to them while living*.

11. suprā . . . memoriam: *before our day*.

12. *regular*.

All state news is under control of officers.

20. Quae¹ civitatēs commodius² suam rem publicam administrāre existimantur habent³ lēgibus sānctum, si quis quid dē rē publicā ā finitimīs rūmōre ac fāmā⁴ accēperit,⁵ utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve⁶ cum quō aliō
5 commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerariōs atque imperitōs falsis rūmōribus terrēri et ad facinus⁷ impelli et dē summīs rēbus cōsiliū capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae⁸ vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex⁹ ūsū iūdicāvērunt multitudinī prōdunt.¹⁰ Dē rē publicā nisi per
10 conciliū loqui nōn concēditur.

Religion and customs of the Germans.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent qui rēbus divīnis praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt¹¹ quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus¹² iuvantur, Sōlem
15 et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vita omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōsistit; ā parvis¹³ labōri ac dūritiae student.

No private ownership of land.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, maiorque pars eōrum victūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōsistit. Neque quisquam

falsus, -a, -um, *false*.

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *see, perceive*.

vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis, *f., hunting*.

dūritia, -ae, *f.; cf. dūrus*.

cāseus, -ī, *m., cheese*.

1. quae civitatēs = eae civitatēs quae.

2. *better (than others)*.

3. habent lēgibus sānctum utī: *have it enacted by law that*.

4. *common report*.

5. *has heard*.

6. *and not*.

7. *bold deed*.

8. quae vīsa sunt: *what seems good (to hide)*.

9. ex ūsū: *of advantage*.

10. *publish*.

11. = *putant*.

12. *aid*.

13. = *pueris*.

agrī modum certum aut finēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs ac principēs in annōs singulōs gentibus¹ cōgnātiōnibusque² hominum, quīque³ ūnā⁴ coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post
 5 aliō⁵ trānsire⁶ cōgunt. Eius rei multās afferunt causās :⁷ nē assiduā cōsuētūdine captī studium bellī gerendi agricultūrā⁸ commūtent;⁹ nē lātōs finēs parāre studeant potentiōrēs¹⁰ atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius quam ad frīgora¹¹ atque aestūs vitandōs
 10 aedificent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte¹² plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī¹³ videat.

Government. Relations with neighbors. Hospitality.

23. Cīvitātibus maxima laus¹⁴ est quam lātissimē circum cum sē vāstātis finibus¹⁵ sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hoc¹⁶ propriū¹⁷ virtūtis existimant, expulsōs agris finitimōs cēdere,

proprius, -a, -um = privātus.
 cōgnātiō, cōgnātiōnis, f.; cf. nāscor.
 coeō; cf. com + eō.
 assiduus, -a, -um, continued.

accūrātē = diligenter.
 aestus, -ūs, m., heat.
 aedificō, ī, erect a building, build (houses).
 sōlitūdō, sōlitūdinis, f.; cf. sōlus.

1. clans; indir. obj. of attribuunt.

2. cōgnātiōnibus hominum: groups of kinsmen.

3. = eisque quī.

4. ūnā coiērunt: have banded together.

5. Adverb.

6. = excēdere.

7. Explained by the subjunctive clauses which follow.

8. for agriculture; abl. of

price.

9. exchange.

10. Subject of studeant.

11. cold.

12. Cf. aequus.

13. are equalized.

14. = glōria.

15. border lands.

16. Subject of esse understood, explained by the following infinitives.

17. mark.

neque quemquam prope sē audēre cōsistere ; simul hōc ¹ sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentināe incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum civitās aut illātum dēfendit aut infert, magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint et vitae necisque
 5 habeant potestātem dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est cōmūnis magistrātus, sed principēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dicunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia ² nūllam habent infāmiā quae extrā finēs cuiusque civitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae ³ ac dēsidiāe
 10 minuendae causā fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in conciliō dixit sē ducem ⁴ fore, quī ⁵ sequi velint profiteantur, cōsurgunt iī quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur, atque ā multitudīne collaudantur ; ⁶ quī ⁷ ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt
 15 in dēsertōrum ac prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque ⁸ hīs rērum postea fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant ; quī quācumque dē causā ad eōs vērunt ab iniuriā prohibent sāctōsque habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent victusque cōmunicātur.

The Germans compared with the Gauls.

20 24. Ac fuit antea ⁹ tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ultrō ¹⁰ bella inferrent, propter hominum mul-

incursiō, incursiōnis, f., *attack*.

infāmia, -ae, f., *ill repute*.

iuventūs, iuventūtis, f., *youth*.

dēsidia, -ae, f., *laziness*.

dēsertor, dēsertōris, m., *deserter*.

prōditor, prōditōris, m., *traitor*.

dērogō, 1 ; cf. dētrahō.

violō, 1, *harm*.

sāctus, -a, -um, *inviolable, sacred*.

1. Abl. of cause, explained by
timōre sublātō.

2. *raids*.

3. *training*.

4. *i.e.* of some expedition.

5. quī profiteantur : *let them offer* ; represents an imperative

in direct discourse.

6. *are highly praised*.

7. quī ex hīs = eī ex hīs quī.

8. omnium rērum fidēs : *confidence in all matters*.

9. Adv., *before*.

10. *offensively*.

titūdinem agrique inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt loca, circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecis fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illi
 5 Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt; quae gēns ad hoc tempus his sēdibus sēsē cōtinet summamque¹ habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc,² quod in eādē inopiā, egestāte, patientiā quā³ ante Germānī permanent,
 10 eōdem victū et cultū⁴ corporis ūtuntur, Gallis⁵ autem prōvinciārū propinquitās⁶ et trānsmarinārū rērū nōtitia multa⁷ ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largitur,⁸ paulātim assuēfacti⁹ superārī multisque victi proeliis nē sē quidem ipsi cum illis¹⁰ virtūte comparant.

The Hercynian forest.

15 25. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitudō novem diērum iter¹¹ expeditō¹² patet; nōn enim aliter finiri¹³ potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracōrum finibus rēctāque¹⁴ flūminis Dānuvii regiōne pertinet

colōnia, -ae, f., *colony*.

fertilis, -e, *fruitful*.

bellicus, -a, -um, *military*.

egestās, egestātis, f., *poverty*.

patientia, -ae, f.; cf. *pator*.

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um; cf. *mare*.

nōtitia, -ae, f., *knowledge, familiarity*.

rēctus, -a, -um (perf. pass. part. of *regō*), *straight*.

1. Modifies *opīniōnem*.

2. Contrasts *anteā* in line 20, p. 74, and modifies *comparant*.

3. *quā ante*: *as before*.

4. *clothing*.

5. Indir. obj. of *largitur*.

6. Cf. *propinquus*.

7. Acc. plur. *multa* . . .
ūsūs: lit. *many things for abun-*

dance and necessities.

8. *furnishes*.

9. Sc. *Galli*.

10. *i.e. Germānis*.

11. Acc. of extent.

12. *to a fast traveler*.

13. *measured*.

14. *rēctā flūminis regiōne*: *in a course parallel with the river*.

ad finēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrō-
sus diversīs¹ ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium
finēs propter magnitudinem attingit; neque quisquam
est huius² Germāniae quī sē aut adisse ad initium eius
5 silvae dīcat, cum³ diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut quō ex
locō oriātur accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārū
nāscī cōstat quae reliquīs in locis vīsa nōn sint; ex qui-
bus quae maximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prō-
denda⁴ videantur haec⁵ sunt.

The reindeer.

10 26. Est bōs⁶ cervī figurā, cuius ā mediā fronte inter
aurēs ūnum cornū existit,⁷ excelsius magisque dērēctum
hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab eius summō sicut
palmae rāmīque⁸ lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fē-
minae⁹ marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma magnitūdōque
15 cornuum.

The elk.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est
cōnsimilis capris figurā et varietās pellium, sed magni-

hinc, from this point.

*flectō, -ere, flēxī, flēxum, bend,
curve, turn.*

sinistrōsus; cf. sinister + vertō.

fera, -ae, f., wild beast; cf. ferus.

bōs, bōvis, m., ox.

cervus, -ī, m., stag.

figurā, -ae, f., shape.

auris, auris, f., ear.

excelsus, -a, -um = altus.

dērēctus, -a, -um, straight.

palma, -ae, f., palm, hand.

*diffundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,
spread.*

mās, maris, adj., male.

fōrma, -ae, f., shape.

alcēs, alcis, f., elk.

capra, -ae, f., she-goat.

*varietās, varietātis, f., difference,
varied color.*

1. diversīs . . . regiōnibus:
*in a direction leading from the
river.*

2. *of this (part).*

3. Concessive.

4. *ought to be handed down.*

5. *the following.*

6. Here probably means rein-
deer, but the description of this
and of other animals is far from
accurate.

7. *stands out.*

8. *branches.*

9. *of the female.*

tūdine paulō antecēdunt¹ mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra² sine nōdis articulisque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt neque, sī quō afflictāe cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē ac sublevāre³ possunt. His sunt



Reindeer (left) and European Elk

5 arborēs prō cubilibus; ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex

mutilus, -a, -um, *mutilated*.

crūs, crūris, n., *leg*.

nōdus, -ī, m., *knot, joint*.

articulus, -ī, m., *joint, knuckle*.

affligō, -ere, -flicī, -flictum, *press*

upon, throw down.

ērigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *raise up*.

cubīle, cubīlis, n., *couch*.

applicō, I, *apply*. With sē = *lean*.

reclīnō, I, *bend back*.

1. *surpass*.

2. crūra sine nōdis: an in-

credible statement.

3. *prop up*.

vēstigiis cum est animadversum ā vērātōribus quō sē recipere cōsuērint, omnēs¹ eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum² ut summa³ speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōsuētūdine
 5 reclināvērunt, infirmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

The wild ox.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt magnitūdine paulō infā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figurā taurī. Magna vīs eōrum est et magna vērōcitās,
 10 neque hominī neque ferae quam cōspēxērunt parcut. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vērātīōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus quae sint testimōniō,⁵ magnam ferunt laudem.
 15 Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfieri nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figurā et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum⁶ cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsita⁷ ab labris⁸ argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *footprint*.

vērātōr, vērātōris, m., *hunter*.

accīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut into*; cf. ad + caedō.

ūrus, -ī, m., *wild ox*.

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant*.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull*.

vērōcitās, vērōcitātis, f.; cf. vērōx.

studiōsē; cf. studium.

fovea, -ae, f., *pitfall*.

dūrō, 1, *harden*.

assuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum; cf. cōsuēscō.

mānsuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *tame*.

amplitūdō, amplitūdinis, f.; cf. amplius.

argentum, -ī, n., *silver*.

circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *surround*.

epulae, -ārum, f., *banquet*.

pōculum, -ī, n., *cup*.

1. Modifies arborēs.

2. to such a degree.

3. perfect.

4. spare.

5. as evidence.

6. of oxen.

7. collected.

8. ab labris: at the mouth.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 29-34

Finding that the Suebi have withdrawn to the interior, Caesar returns to Gaul and marches against Ambiorix and the Eburones to punish them for slaying Sabinus and Cotta. Ambiorix eludes him and disbands his army. Caesar leaves Quintus Cicero in command of the baggage at Aduatuca, and, dividing the remainder of his army into three parts, goes in search of Ambiorix. Caesar invites other tribes to share with him in the plundering of the Eburones.

The Sugambri start out to obtain a share in plundering the Eburones, but instead they attack the camp which Caesar has left in Cicero's command.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat¹ septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legiōnemque revertī cōstituerat. Hīc² quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs
5 cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātis ac perterritis hostibus, ut dēmōstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo³ causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs pervenit fāma⁴ diripī⁵ Eburōnēs atque ultrō⁶ omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo milia Sugambri,
10 quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque trigintā milibus passuum infrā eum locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relictum; primōs Eburōnum finēs adeunt;
15 multōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, magnō pecoris numerō, cuius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō⁷ latrōciniisque⁷ nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in

ēvocō, 1; cf. vocō.

1. = appropinquābat.

2. just here.

3. even.

4. rumor.

5. plunder.

6. moreover.

7. Datives of purpose, modifying nātōs.

locis sit Caesar ex captivis quaerunt; profectum¹ longius
 reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt.
 Atque ūnus ex captivis, 'Quid vōs,' inquit,² 'hanc
 miseram ac tenuem³ sectāminī praedam, quibus licet
 5 iam esse fortūnātissimōs? Tribus hōris Aduatucam
 venīre potestis; hūc omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus
 Rōmānōrum contulit; praesidiū tantum⁴ est ut nē mūrus
 quidem cingi⁵ possit neque quisquam ēgredi extrā
 mūnitiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā spē Germānī quam
 10 nacti erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsi Aduatu-
 cam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce cuius haec indiciō⁶
 cōgnōverant.

*Contrary to Caesar's orders, Cicero sends a large number of men out of
 camp to forage.*

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptis
 Caesaris summā diligentīā militēs in castris continuisset
 15 ac nē cālōnem⁷ quidem quemquam extrā mūnitiōnem
 ēgredi passus esset, septimō diē diffidēns⁸ dē numerō
 diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prō-
 gressum⁹ audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū eius fāma af-
 ferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus quī illius
 20 patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, sī quidem
 ex castris ēgredi nōn liceret, nūllum eiusmodi cāsum
 exspectāns quō, novem oppositis¹⁰ legiōnibus maximōque

sector, i, frequentative of sequor.
 fortūnātus, -a, -um; cf. fortūna.
 reditus, -ūs, m.; cf. red-eō.

obsessiō, obsessiōnis, f., *blockade*.
 oppōnō, -ere, -posui, -positum;
 cf. pōnō.

1. profectum (esse): sc. Cae-
 sarem as subject.

2. said he.

3. insignificant.

4. so little.

5. = dēfendi.

6. information.

7. camp servant.

8. not feeling sure.

9. prōgressum (esse): sc.
 Caesarem as subject.

10. sent against the enemy.

equitātū, dispersis ac paene dēlētis¹ hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi² posset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs
 5 ex legiōnibus aegrī relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum convaluerant, circiter ccc, sub vēxillō ūnā mit-tuntur; magna praetereā multītūdō cālōnum, magna vīs³ iūmentōrum,⁴ quae in castrīs subsēderat, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Germans assault the camp and a panic ensues.

10 37. Hōc ipsō tempore cāsū Germānī equitēs interve-niunt prōtinusque⁵ eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab decumānā portā in castra irrumpere⁶ cōnantur, nec⁷ prius sunt vīsī, obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appropinquārent, usque⁸ eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent⁹
 15 mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. In-opīnantēs¹⁰ nostrī rē novā perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statīōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī¹¹ quem aditum reperire possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs

seges, segetis, f., grain, grain field.

convalēscō, -ere, -valuī, —, recover.

subsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, stay

behind, remain.

interveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum; cf. veniō.

circumfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, surround; pass. gather around.

1. destroyed.

2. offendi posset: harm could be done; subjunctive of result introduced by quō.

3. = numerus.

4. beasts of burden.

5. at once.

6. rush.

7. nec prius quam: and not till.

8. usque eō ut: so much so that.

9. stretched (tents), had their booths.

10. unprepared.

11. to see whether.

locus ipse per sē mūnitiōque dēfendit. Tōtis trepidatur¹ castris, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō signa ferantur neque quam in partem quisque conveniat² prōvident. Alius castra iam
 5 capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit;³ plērique novās⁴ sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaque et Titūrī calamitātem, quī in eōdem castellō occiderint, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritis cōfirmātur
 10 opiniō barbaris,⁵ ut ex captivō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere⁶ nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur⁷ nē tantam fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

Publius Sextius Baculus again displays his bravery.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus, quī primum pilum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cuius
 15 mentiōnem superiōribus proeliis fēcimus, ac diem iam quintum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffisus suae atque omnium salutī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discrimine; capit arma ā proximis atque in portā cōsistit. Cōsequuntur hunc
 20 centuriōnēs eius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper unā proelium sustinent. Relinquit⁸ animus Sextium

tālis, -e, *such*.

mentiō, mentiōnis, f., *mention*.

cibus, -ī, m., *food*.

careō, -ēre, carui, —, *want, be*

without.

immineō, -ēre, —, —, *be close at hand*.

discrimen, discriminis, n., *crisis*.

1. *there was a panic.*

2. *rally.*

3. *insisted.*

4. novās . . . fingunt: *make up new superstitions from the locality.*

5. Dat. of reference modifying cōfirmātur.

6. Cf. irrumpere.

7. Cf. hortor.

8. relinquit animus Sextium: *Sextius fainted.*

gravibus acceptis vulneribus ; aegrē per¹ manūs trāditus servātur. Hōc spatiō² interpositō reliquī sēsē cōfirmant tantum³ ut in mūnitiōnibus cōsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

The foragers return toward camp amidst much confusion.

5 39. Interim cōfectā frūmentātiōne militēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt ;⁴ praecurrunt equitēs, quantō rēs sit in periculō cōgnōscunt. Hic vērō nūlla mūnitiō est quae perterritōs recipiat ; modo⁵ cōscriptī atque ūsūs militāris imperitī ad tribūnum militum centuriōnēsque
10 ōra⁶ convertunt ; quid ab hīs praeciipiātur⁷ expectant. Nēmō est tam fortis quā rei novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī signa procul⁸ cōspicātī oppugnātiōne dēsistunt ; redisse primō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discessisse ex captivīs cōgnōverant ; postea dēspectā paucitāte ex
15 omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

The foragers finally reach camp with some loss.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumultum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in signa manipulōsque coniciunt ; eō magis timidōs perterrent militēs. Aliī cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant cēnsent :⁹ Quoniam tam propinqua
20 sint castra, etsi pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at¹⁰

frūmentātiō, frūmentātiōnis, f.,
foraging.

praecurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -cursum,

to hurry ahead.

novitās, novitātis, f., *novelty.*

cuneus, -ī, m., "*flying wedge.*"

1. per manūs : *from hand to hand.*

2. Sc. temporis.

3. *to such a degree.*

4. *heard from a distance.*

5. *newly.*

6. *faces.*

7. *was ordered.*

8. *from a distance.*

9. *expressed it as their opinion.*

10. *at any rate.*

reliquōs servārī posse; aliī¹ ut in iugō cōsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hoc veterēs nōn probant militēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, 5 quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūti cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū militum virtūte servantur. At ii quī in iugō cōstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū rei militāris perceptō,² neque in eō quod 10 probāverant cōsiliō permanēre,³ ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam⁴ quam prōfuisse aliīs vim celeritātemque viderant imitārī potuerunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī iniquum in locum dēmiserunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōnnūllī ex inferiōribus ordinibus reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōrēs erant ordinēs huius 15 legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam⁵ rei militāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pignantēs conciderunt. Militum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbaris circumventa 20 periit.⁶

The Germans depart, but the Romans are left in great fear, which is allayed by Caesar's arrival.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expugnātiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōstitisse in mūnitiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā

percipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *obtain, gain.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, *to be advantageous.*

imitor, 1, *copy, represent, imitate.*

expugnātiō, expugnātiōnis, f.; cf. expugnō.

1. Sc. cēnsent.

2. *having gained.*

3. Complementary inf. to potuerunt.

4. Modifies vim celeritātemque.

5. *acquired.*

6. *perished.*

praedā quam in silvis dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē
 recēpērunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum ho-
 stium terror ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus missus cum
 equitātū in castra vēnisset, fidem¹ nōn faceret adesse cum
 5 incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor
 occupāverat ut, paene aliēnātā mente, dēlētis omnibus
 cōpiis equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent neque²
 incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppugnātūrōs fuisse
 contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sus-
 10 tulit.

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 42-44

Caesar inflicts punishment on other revolting tribes, distributes his forces, and returns to Italy for the-winter.

aliēnō, 1, make strange; part. frenzied.

-
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>fidem nōn faceret:</i> could
<i>not make them believe.</i> | <i>man) army safe the Germans
 would not have attacked the</i> |
| 2. <i>neque . . . contenderent:</i>
<i>and they held that with the (Ro-</i> | <i>camp.</i> |

LIBER SEPTIMUS

RÉSUMÉ OF CHAPTERS 1-67

While Caesar is in Italy, the Carnutes and Arverni begin a revolt under Vercingetorix, who storms a city of the Boii called Gorgobina. Caesar returns from Italy with help. On the way he takes several towns and proceeds to Avaricum, a town which the Gauls have not burned because they think it impregnable to Caesar's attack. But the town is finally taken after a defense has been maintained for twenty-five days and 40,000 men, women, and children have been slain. Caesar thinks that this victory will destroy the compact against him that exists among the Gallic tribes, and so divides his army. But more states join Vercingetorix. Caesar himself goes to Gergovia, engages the Gauls, and suffers a heavy loss. The Haeduan immediately revolt and sack Noviodunum, one of their own towns, in which Caesar has placed provisions and hostages. Caesar nevertheless marches northward through the Haeduan territory to the Senones, and is joined by Labienus, who has just won a great victory at Lutetia.

Upon the revolt of the Haeduan, defection spreads to nearly all the Gallic tribes. A council of all Gaul is called, and Vercingetorix is named commander in chief. Caesar meanwhile sends to the Germans for cavalry, and starts out to defend the Province, which Vercingetorix has threatened. During this march, the Gauls make an attack on the Romans, but are defeated and pursued by the Romans to Alesia.

Vercingetorix retires to Alesia. Caesar pursues him and begins to build a wall.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorix cōpiās suās, ut prō castris collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit cele-
riterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī ius-
5 sit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem ductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis, secūtus hostēs quan-

tum diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus ex novissimō agmine interfectis, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritisque hostibus, quod equitātū,¹ quā maximē parte exercitūs² cōn-
 5 fidēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus³ ad labōrem militēs Alesiam circumvāllāre instituit.

The situation of Alesia.

69. Positum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum⁴ ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expugnārī nōn posse vidē-
 rētur; cuius collis rādīcēs⁵ duo duābus ex partibus
 10 flūmina subluēbant. Ante oppidum plānitīēs circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patēbat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō⁶ spatiō parī⁷ altitudinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae
 15 locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam in altitudinem sex pedum praedūxerant. Eius mūnitiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs instituēbātur circuitus x milia passuum tenēbat.⁸ Castra opportunis locis erant
 20 posita viii castellaque xxiii facta; quibus in castellis interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus ac firmis prae-sidiis tenēbantur.

situs, -ūs, m., *location.*

circumvāllō, i; cf. circum + vāllō (vāllum).

subluō, -ere, —, —, *wash.*

fastīgium, -ī, n., *elevation.*

māceria, -ae, f., *wall.*

praeducō; cf. ducō.

excubitor, excubitōris, m., *sentinel.*

1. in skirmishes with their cavalry.

2. i.e. of the Gauls.

3. Cf. hortor.

4. very.

5. Accusative.

6. Cf. inter + iaciō.

7. parī altitudinis fastīgiō: with tops of equal height.

8. embraced,

The Gauls are beaten in a cavalry battle.

70. Opere institūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitīē quam intermissam¹ collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrisque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostris Caesar Ger-
 5 mānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castris cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat. Praesidiō legiōnum² additō nostris animus augētur; hostēs in fugam coniecti sē ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus² portis relictis coartantur. Germānī ācrius
 10 usque ad mūnitiōnēs persequuntur. Fit magna caedēs; nōnnūlli relictis equis fossam trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōstituerat prōmovērī iubet. Nōn³ minus qui intrā mūnitiōnēs erant Galli perturbantur; veniri ad sē
 15 cōnfestim existimantēs ad arma conclāmant; nōnnūlli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portās⁴ claudī, nē castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, complūribus equis captis, Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix sends his cavalry home to make a general levy.

71. Vercingetorix, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs
 20 perficiantur, cōsiliū capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēsque qui per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae⁵ salūtis ratiōnem habeant

irruptiō, irruptiōnis, f., a breaking in, attack.

coartō, 1, crowd together.
 obtestor, 1, entreat.

1. broken.

2. angustioribus . . . relictis:
 because the gates had been left
 (made) too narrow.

3. nōn minus: i.e. than the
 cavalry.

4. inner gates.

5. Refers to Vercingetorix.

neu¹ sē² optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne³ initā frūmentum sē exiguē⁴ diērum
 5 xxx habēre sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī⁵ posse par-
 cendō.⁶ Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus⁷
 intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dimittit.
 Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs
 quī nōn pāruerint⁸ cōstituit; pecus, cuius magna erat
 10 cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, viritim distribuit; frūmen-
 tum parcē et paulātim mētīrī instituit; cōpiās omnēs
 quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs
 ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum admini-
 strāre parat.

Caesar's circumvallation.

15 72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis ex perfugīs et captivīs,
 Caesar haec genera mūnitiōnis instituit. Fossam pedum
 xx dērēctīs⁹ lateribus dūxit, ut eius fossae solum¹⁰ tan-
 tundem patēret quantum summa labra¹¹ distārent; reli-
 quās omnēs mūnitiōnēs ab eā fossā pedibus cccc reduxit
 20 hōc¹² cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum spatium necessariō esset
 complexus nec facile tōtum opus corōnā militum cingerē-
 tur, nē dē imprōvisō aut noctū ad mūnitiōnēs multitudō

silentium, -ī, n., *silence*.

viritim, *individually*; cf. *vir*.

parcē, *sparingly*.

tantundem, *just so far*.

distō, -āre, —, —, *be apart*.

corōna, -ae, f., *crown, ring, line*.

1. *and not*.

2. sē . . . meritum: *him who had done his best for, etc.*

3. ratiōne initā: *by actual calculation*.

4. *barely*.

5. *be endured*; impersonal.

6. *by being saving*.

7. *fortification*.

8. *did obey*.

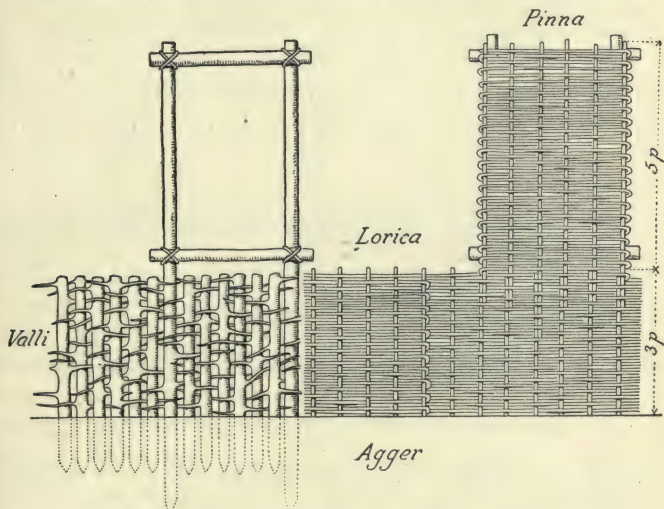
9. *perpendicular*.

10. *bottom*.

11. *edges*.

12. hōc cōnsiliō: explained by
 nē . . . advolāret aut . . . pos-
 sent,

hostium advolāret,¹ aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstīnātōs² conicere possent. Hōc intermissō spatiō duās fossās xv pedēs lātās eādem altitūdine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem³ campestribus ac dēmissis⁴ locīs aquā ex flūmine
 5 dērivātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem ac vāllum xii pedum exstrūxit; huic lōricam⁵ pinnāsque adiēcit, grandi-



The Defenses on Caesar's Rampart before Alesia

bus cervīs⁶ ēminentibus ad commissūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris quī ascēsum hostium tardārent,⁷ et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit quae pedēs LXXX inter sē distārent.

campester, -ris, -re, *flat*.

dērivō, 1; cf. dēdūcō.

ēmineō, -ēre, -minuī, —, *project*.

commissūra, -ae, f., *a joining, junction*.

pluteus, -ī, m., *shed, defense*.

1. *hastened*.

2. *detailed*.

3. *Sc. fossam*.

4. *low*.

5. lōricam pinnāsque: *breastworks and bulwarks*.

6. *branched tree trunks*.

7. *check*.

Caesar's defenses.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnitiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castris prōgrediēbantur; ac nōnnumquam¹ opera nostra Galli temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō
 5 plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum² Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō militum mūnitiōnēs dēfendi possent. Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum firmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs ac praeacūtīs cacūminibus per-



ab Pinnae. bc Lorica of Plutei.

Outline of Caesar's Works before Alesia

10 petuae³ fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illi stīpitēs dēmissī et ab⁴ infimō revīnctī, nē revelli⁵ possent, ab⁶ rāmīs ēminēbant.⁷ Quīnī erant ōrdinēs, coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant⁸ sē⁹ ipsī acūtissimis vāllis induēbant. Hōs cippōs appellābant.

māterior, I, cut timber.

truncus, -ī, m., trunk.

abscidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum, cut down.

dēlibrō, I, peel.

cacūmen, cacūminis, n., top.

stīpes, stīpitis, m., log.

revinciō, -īre, -vīnxī, -vīnctum, fasten.

implicō, I, interweave.

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp.

vāllus, -ī, m., stake.

cippus, -ī, m., pointed pillar, tombstone.

1. at times.

2. addition should be made.

3. continuous.

4. ab infimō: at the bottom.

5. be torn away.

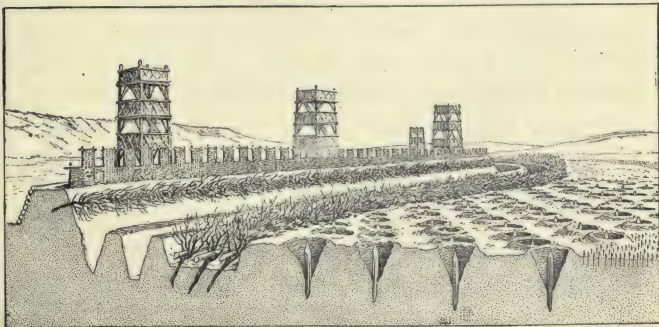
6. with.

7. projected.

8. entered.

9. sē induēbant: were impaled.

Ante hōs obliquis ōrdinibus in¹ quīncuncem dispositis
 scrobēs in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur pau-
 lātīm angustiore ad infimum fastigiō.² Hūc teretēs stī-
 pitēs feminis³ crassitūdine⁴ ab summō praeacūtī et
 5 praeustī dēmittēbantur ita ut nōn amplius digitis⁵ quat-
 tuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōfirmandī et stabiliendī
 causā singulī⁶ ab infimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur,



Conjectural Appearance of Caesar's Works before Alesia

For greater clearness, only a few rows of cippi and of lilia are shown.

reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās insidiās vīminibus
 ac virgultis integēbātur. Huius generis octōnī ōrdinēs
 10 ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs distābant. Id ex similitūdine

oblīquus, -a, -um, *transverse*.

quīncunx, quīncuncis, m., see
 note on this word.

scrobis, scrobis, m. and f., *pit*.

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, *fossum*, *dig*.

teres, teretis, *smooth*.

stabiliō, 4, *fasten*.

exculcō, 1, *stamp down*.

integō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover*
over.

octōnī, -ae, -a, *eight each, eight*.

ternī, -ae, -a, *three each*.

similitūdō, similitūdinis, f., *re-*
semblance.

1. in quīncuncem: *i.e.* ar-
 ranged thus ∴

2. *slope*.

3. *thigh*.

4. *thickness*.

5. *finger (breadths), inches*.

6. singulī pedēs: *a foot of*
each stake.

flōris lilium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae¹ pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs infixīs tōtae in terram infodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Caesar builds similar defenses against the enemy outside.

5 74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus² quam potuit aequissimās prō loci nātūrā, XIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs eiusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, dīversās³ ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitūdine mūnitiōnum praesidia circumfūsa⁴
 10 perrumpī⁵ possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castris ēgredi cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum⁶ frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

An enormous army is levied by the Gauls.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli conciliō principum indictō⁷ nōn omñēs quī arma ferre possent, ut
 15 cēnsuit⁸ Vercingetorix, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs⁹ nec frū-

flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.

līlium, -ī, n., *lily*.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook*.

infigō, -ere, -fixī, -fixum, *fasten on*.

infodiō; cf. fodiō.

disserō, -ere, —, —, *plant at intervals*.

stimulus, -ī, m., *goad*.

exterus, -a, -um, *outside*.

convehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *collect*.

cōfundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *combine*.

moderor, I, *check, control, keep within bounds*.

discernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *separate, distinguish*.

1. *stakes*.

2. *keeping to*.

3. *facing opposite, i.e. toward the enemy outside*.

4. *surrounded*.

5. *broken through*.

6. *forage*.

7. *appointed*.

8. *proposed*.

9. *Object of both infinitives*.

mentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Haeduīs
 atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvis, Ambarrīs, Aulercīs
 Brannovīcibus, mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs,
 adiūctīs¹ Helviis, Cadūrcīs, Gabalis, Vellāviis, quī sub
 5 imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Seno-
 nibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutēnis, Carnutibus duo-
 dēna² mīlia; Bellovacīs x; totidem Lemovīcibus; oc-
 tōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiis et Helvētiis; sēna
 Andibus, Ambiānis, Mediomatricīs, Petrocoriis, Nerviiis,
 10 Morinīs, Nitobrogibus; v mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs;
 totidem Atrebātibus; iiii Veliocassīs; Esuviis et Aulercīs
 Eburovīcibus iiii; Rauracīs et Bōiis bīna; x ūniversīs
 civitātibus quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōn-
 suētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō
 15 Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Ve-
 netī, Lexovii, Venelli. Ex his Bellovacī suum numerum
 nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō³ cum
 Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent neque cuiusquam
 imperiō obtemperātūrōs;⁴ rogāti tamen ab Commiō prō⁵
 20 eius hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

The Gauls, confident of success, start for Alesia. The command is divided among four men.

76. Huius operā Commiī, ut antea dēmōstrāvimus,
 fideli atque **ūtili** superiōribus annis erat ūsus in Britannia
 Caesar; prō quibus meritis civitatem eius immūnem esse
 iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs
 25 attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō

bīnī, -ae, -a, two each.

ūtilis, -e, useful.

immūnis, -e, exempt (from

taxes).

cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsiōnis, f.; cf.

cōnsentiō.

1. allied with.

2. duodēna mīlia: twelve thou-
 sand each.

3. discretion.

4. would obey.

5. in consideration of.

fuit libertātis vindicandae et prīstinae belli laudis recuperandae,¹ ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērētur,² omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctis equitum milibus viii et
 5 peditum circiter ccl, haec in Haeduōrum finibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inibātur,³ praefectī cōstituēbantur: Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Eporēdorīgī Haeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsobrīnō Vercingetorigis, summa imperii trāditur. His dēlēctī⁴ ex ci-
 10 vitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam quī aspectum⁵ modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipiti⁶ proeliō, cum ex oppidō ērup-
 15 tiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiaae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Extraordinary measures are proposed by Critognatus.

77. At ii quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā⁷ diē quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōsūmptō omni frūmentō, insciī quid in Haeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō
 20 dē exitū suārum fortūnārum cōsultābant. Ac variis dictis sentiētiis, quārum pars dēditionem, pars, dum virēs suppetere⁸, ēruptionem cēnsēbat,⁹ nōn praeter-

vindicō, I, *claim*.

incumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum,
apply one's self.

recēnsēō, -ēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsus,
count over.

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, m., *cousin*.

fidūcia, -ae, f., *confidence*.

forīs, adv., *outside*.

īnciūs, -a, -um; cf. sciō.

cōsultō, I, *take counsel*.

1. *recovering*.

2. Sc. Gallia as subject.

3. *was recorded*.

4. *representatives*.

5. *sight*.

6. The following clauses explain why.

7. Cf. *praeter* + *eō*.

8. *held out*.

9. *considered*.

eunda vidētur ōrātiō Critognātī propter eius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et magnae habitus auctōritātis, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servi-
 5 tūtem dēditionis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēseō. Cum¹ his mihi rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōsēnsū² prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn
 10 virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī offerant³ facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc⁴ sententiam probārem (tantum⁵ apud mē dignitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūrā⁶ fierī vidērem; sed
 15 in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Gālliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus.⁷ Quid hominum milibus⁸ LXXX ūnō locō interfectis propinquis⁹ cōnsanguineisque⁹ nostrīs animī¹⁰ fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsis cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlite
 20 hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritāte

nefārius, -a, -um, *impious*.
 cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., *citizen*.
 resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, —; cf. manēō.
 iste, ista, istud, demonstrative pron., *that of yours*.
 mollitia, -ae, f., *irresolution*.

patienter, *patiently*.
 praeterquam, prep., *except*.
 vester, vestra, vestrum, *your* (plu.).
 exspoliō, I, *rob*.
 stultitia, -ae, f., *folly, foolishness*.

1. cum . . . est: *my concern lies with these*.

2. Cf. cōsentiō.

3. Cf. ferō.

4. hanc sententiam: *i.e.* of making a sally.

5. tantum . . . potest:

such weight has honor with me.

6. *loss*.

7. Cf. incitō.

8. Abl. abs.

9. Datives of possession with fore.

10. Partitive gen. with quid.

vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōster-
nere¹ et perpetuae servitūtī subicere.¹ An, quod ad
diem nōn vērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque² dubi-
tātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūni-
5 tiōnibus animine³ causā cotidiē exercērī⁴ putātis?
Si illōrum⁵ nūntiis cōfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū
praesaep-tō, hīs⁶ ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre
eōrum⁷ adventum; cuius rei timōre exterritī diem
noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō mei cōsiliū
10 est? Facere⁸ quod nostrī maiōrēs nēquāquam parī⁹
bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida
compulsi ac simili inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus¹⁰ quī
aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvē-
runt¹¹ neque sē hostibus trādiderunt. Cuius rei sī
15 exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen libertātis causā institūi
et posterīs prōdī¹² pulcherrimum¹³ iūdicārem. Nam
quid¹⁴ illi simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī
magnāque illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs ali-
quandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,

imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis, f.,
weakness.

prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātum,
ruin.

ergō, *therefore, then.*

praesaepiō, -ire, -saepsī, -saep-
tum, *block.*

exterreō, 2; cf. per-terreō.

meus, -a, -um, *my.*

nēquāquam, *by no means.*

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *subdue.*

pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum, *beau-
tiful, noble.*

aliquandō, *finally.*

1. Sc. nolite.

2. *steadfastness.*

3. animī + ne, the interrog.
particle. animī causā: *for the
sake of amusement.*

4. *are kept in motion.*

5. *i.e.* the Gauls outside.

6. *i.e.* the Romans.

7. *i.e.* the Gauls.

8. *(it is my plan) to do.*

9. *i.e.* to the present war.

10. Abl. of means with tolerā-
vērunt.

11. *sustained.*

12. Cf. dō.

13. Agrees with institūi and
prōdī.

14. quid . . . fuit: *what simi-
larity had that war (to this
one)?*

lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō
 quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā adducti,
 quōs¹ fāmā nōbilēs potentēque bellō cōgnōvērunt,
 hōrum in agrīs civitātibusque cōsidere atque hīs aeter-
 5 nam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā
 condiōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longin-
 quīs nātiōnibus geruntur ignōrātis,² respicite finitimam
 Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus
 commūtātis,³ secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur
 10 servitūte.'

Caesar refuses to allow noncombatants to leave Alesia.

78. Sententiis dictis cōstituunt ut ii quī valētūdine⁴
 aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque
 omnia prius experienda arbitrantur quam ad Critognātī
 sententiam dēscendant; illō⁵ tamen potius ūtendum
 15 cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut
 dēditionis aut pācis subeundam condiōnem. Mandubii,
 quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum liberis atque uxōribus
 exīre cōguntur. Hī, cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum
 accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant ut sē in
 20 servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositis
 in vāllō custōdiis⁶ recipī prohibēbat.

The Gallic troops arrive and encamp near the town.

79. Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs quibus summa
 imperiū permissa erat cum omnibus cōpiis ad Alesiam

invidia, -ae, f., *envy*.

aeternus, -a, -um, *everlasting*.

iniungo, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctum;

cf. impōnō.

secūris, secūris, f., *ax*; symbol of
 Roman authority.

1. The antecedent is hōrum.

2. Cf. nōscō.

3. *changed*.

4. *ill health*.

5. illō . . . cōnsiliō, quam: *but that plan must be used rather than*.

6. *guards*.

5

10

15

20



Sagittarius

perveniunt et colle ēditiōre¹ occupātō
 nōn longius mille passibus ā no-
 strīs mūnitiōnibus cōsidunt.
 Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs
 ēductō omnem eam plā-
 nitiam quam in longitū-
 dinem milia passuum
 tria patēre dēmōnstrāvi-
 mus complent pedestrēs-
 que cōpiās paulum ab
 eō locō abductās in locīs
 superiōribus cōstituunt.
 Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dē-
 spectus² in campum. Concur-
 runt³ hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grā-
 tulātiō⁴ inter eōs, atque omnium
 animī ad laetitiam⁵ excitantur.
 Itaque prōductis cōpiīs ante oppi-
 dum cōsistunt et proximam fos-
 sam⁶ crātibus⁷ integunt atque
 aggere⁸ explent sēque ad
 ēruptiōnem atque omnēs
 cāsūs comparant.

The Gallic cavalry suffers defeat.

25 ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus
 veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum
 ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex

1. *higher.*

2. Cf. dēspiciō.

3. *i.e.* the Gauls in the town.

4. *expressions of joy.*

5. *joy.*

6. *i.e.* the twenty-foot ditch
 nearest Alesia.

7. *wickerwork.*

8. *earth.*

9. *i.e.* the infantry.

omnibus castris quae summum undique iugum tenēbant
 despectus, atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proven-
 tum¹ expectabant. Galli inter equites raros sagittarios
 expeditosque levis armaturae interiecerant qui suis
 5 cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum
 impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures de improvisō
 vulnerati proelio excedebant. Cum suos pugna superi-
 ores esse Galli² confiderent et nostros multitudine premi
 viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii qui munitionibus
 10 continebantur et ii qui ad auxilium convenerant clamore
 et ululatu³ suorum animos confirmabant. Quod in con-
 spectu omnium res gereretur neque⁴ aut recte aut
 turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis cupidi-
 tas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. Cum a
 15 meridiē prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur,⁵
 Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes
 impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam
 coniectis sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item
 ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes⁶ usque ad castra
 20 insecuti sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii
 qui Alesia processerant, maesti, prope victoriā desperata,
 se in oppidum reciperunt.

The Gauls make a night attack.

81. Unō diē intermissō atque hōc spatiō magnō
 cratium,⁷ scalarum,⁸ harpagonum numero effectō Galli,

rarus, -a, -um, *wide apart.*

recte, adv., *well.*

ignominia, -ae, f., *disgrace.*

turma, -ae, f., *squadron.*

maestus, -a, -um, *sad.*

harpagō, harpagōnis, m., *hook.*

1. = ēventum.

2. i.e. the onlookers.

3. yell.

4. neque . . . poterat: *no
brave or cowardly deed could*

escape notice.

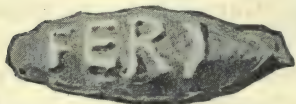
5. *had been raging.*

6. Accusative.

7. *hurdles.*

8. *ladders.*

mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressi ad campestrēs¹
mūnitiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā
significātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū
cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundis,² sagittis,
5 lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaue quae ad
oppugnātiōnem pertinent parant administrāre. Eōdem



10

Glans

Inscribed FERI, and on the other side
POMP (for Pompeium), i.e. Strike
Pompey.

tempore clāmōre exauditō dat
tubā signum suis Vercinge-
torix atque ex oppidō ēdūcit.
Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus
suus cuique erat locus attri-
būtus, ad mūnitiōnēs ac-
cēdunt; fundis³ librilibus
sudibusque,⁴ quās in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus⁵
15 Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēptō multa
utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentis
tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius
lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,
quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex
20 ulteriōribus castellis dēductōs submittēbant.

The Gauls retire without accomplishing their desire.

82. Dum⁶ longius ā mūnitiōne aberant Gallī, plūs
multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius
successērunt, aut sē⁷ stimulis⁸ inopināntēs induēbant aut
in scrobēs⁹ dēlāti trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō ac turri-

sagitta, -ae, f., arrow.

librilis, -e, of a pound weight.

prōterreō, 2; cf. perterreō.

tenebrae, -ārum, f., darkness.

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossū,
pierce through.

1. in the field.

2. with slings.

3. slingstones.

4. stakes.

5. bullets.

6. as long as.

7. sē induēbant: were im-
paled.

8. sharp points.

9. ditches.

bus¹ trāiecti² pīlis³ mūrālibus interībant.⁴ Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nullā mūnitiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret,⁵ veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castris ēruptiōne circumvenirentur, sē ad suōs recēpē-
 5 runt. At interiōrēs,⁶ dum ea quae ā Vercingetorige ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt,⁷ priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in his rēbus administrandis morātī prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnitiōnibus appropinquārent. Ita rē infectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Gauls make a third attack.

10 83. Bis magnō cum dētrimentō repulsī Gallī quid agant cōsulunt; locōrum peritōs adhibent; ex his superiōrum castrōrum sitūs⁸ mūnitiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī,
 15 necessariōque paene iniquō locō et lēniter⁹ dēclivī¹⁰ castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Caninius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitis per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium Lx mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maxi-
 20 mam virtūtis opiniōnem habēbant; quid quōque¹¹ pactō agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum meridiēs esse videātur. His cōpiis Ver-

praeparō, 1; cf. parō.

prōferō; cf. ferō.

inficiō; cf. faciō.

bis, twice.

circumplector, -ī, -plexus sum, surround.

pactum, -ī, n., manner.

dēfīniō, 4, limit, set.

1. Abl. of separation.

2. run through.

3. Abl. of means.

4. perished.

5. = appropinquāret.

6. i.e. those in the town.

7. Sc. et to connect with explent.

8. locations.

9. gently.

10. sloping downward.

11. = et quō.

cassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem sē occultāvit milītēsque ex nocturnō labōre
 5 sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam meridiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Romans are attacked from both sides.

10 84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs, mūrālēs¹ falcēs, reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae minimē vīsa pars firma est, hūc con-
 15 curritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnitiōnibus distīnētur² nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit.³ Multum⁴ ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor quī post tergum pugnantibus existit,⁵ quod suum⁶ praesidium in aliēnā vident virtūte cōstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt⁷
 20 vehementius⁸ hominum mentēs perturbant.

Desperate fighting continues on both sides.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit. Utrisque⁹ ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud

longurius, -ī, m., long pole.

-
1. wall.
 2. Cf. teneō.
 3. resisted; sc. hostibus.
 4. multum . . . valet: does much toward frightening.
 5. arises.

6. suum praesidium . . . cōstāre: their own protection depends much on others' bravery.
 7. are out of sight.
 8. quite strongly.
 9. to both sides.

tempus quō maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērānt; Rōmānī, sī rem¹ obtinuerint, finem labōrum omnium expectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs labōrātūr, quō Ver-
 5 cassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum² locī ad dēclivitatē fastīgium magnum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla coniciunt, alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs³ in⁴ vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnitiōnem coniectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea
 10 quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec virēs suppetunt.

Caesar sends reënforcements and urges on his men.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne⁵ pugnet;
 15 id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs; cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum frūctum⁶ in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs⁷ dēspērātis campestribus⁸ locīs propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum loca praeupta ascēnsū⁹
 20 temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōferunt. Multitudine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpugnantēs¹⁰ dēturbant,¹¹

dēclivitās, dēclivitātis, f., *descent*.
 mōmentum, -i, n., *movement, importance*.
 contegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *cover over*.

succumbō, -ere, -cubūī, -cubitum, *yield*.
 dīmiciātiō, dīmiciātiōnis, f.; cf. dīmiciō.
 praeuptus, -a, -um, *steep*.

1. *the battle.*
2. inīquum . . . fastīgium: *the uneven downward slope of the ground.*
3. *wearied.*
4. in vicem: *in turn.*
5. Abl. of means.

6. *fruit.*
7. *i.e. those inside.*
8. *level.*
9. Abl. of specification with *praeupta*.
10. *i.e. the Romans: acc. case.*
11. *drive off.*

aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum ac lōricam¹ rescindunt.

Caesar himself enters the fight.

87. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscētem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis C. Fabium lēgātum; postremō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidio addūcit. Restitutō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum miserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequi, partem circumire exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coactis xi cohortibus, quās ex proximis praesidiis dēductās fors² obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid³ faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.⁴

The Gauls are completely defeated.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestitūs cōgnitō, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus visis quās sē sequi iusserat, ut dē locis superiōribus haec dēclīvia⁶ et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit⁷ rūsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmor. Nostri ēmissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente⁸ post⁹ tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs

accelerō, I, *hurry.*

vestitus, -ūs, m., *attire.*

1. *breastworks.*
2. *chance.*
3. *quid faciendum: i.e. to make a sally.*
4. *take part.*
5. *squadrons.*

6. *dēclīvia et dēvexa: the downward slopes and hillsides.*
7. *followed.*
8. *suddenly.*
9. *post tergum: i.e. of the Gauls.*

aliae appropinquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellanus Arvernus vivus in fugā comprehenditur; signa
 5 militaria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspiciātī¹ ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē auditā ex castris Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbris sub-
 10 sidiis ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiaē dēlēri potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in civitatēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders himself and his entire army.

15 89. Posterō diē Vercingetorix conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fortūnae cēdendum, ad² utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere³ seu vivum⁴ trādere
 20 velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, principēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castris cōnsidit⁵; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorix dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, si⁶ per eōs civitatēs recuperāre posset,
 25 ex reliquis captivīs tōtī exercitui capita⁷ singula praedaē nōmine distribuit.

1. Sc. Gallī.

2. ad utramque rem: *for either alternative*; explained by seu . . . seu . . . velint.

3. *appease*.

4. *alive*.

5. *took his place*.

6. *to see if*.

7. capita singula: *a man apiece*.

Caesar distributes his army for the winter.

90. His rēbus cōfectis in Haeduōs proficiscitur ;
cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae im-
perāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum
numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Capti-
5 vōrum circiter xx milia Haeduīs Arvernīsque reddit.
T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sē-
quanōs proficiscī iubet ; huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum
attribuit. C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum
cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā
10 finitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium
Rēgīnum in Ambivaretōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C.
Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulis legiōnibus
mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī
et Maticōne in Haeduīs ad Ararim rei frūmentāriae
15 causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit. His
rēbus ex Caesaris litterīs cōgnitis, Rōmae diērum vigintī
supplicātiō¹ redditur.

1. *thanksgiving.*

C. IULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO CIVILI
LIBER TERTIUS

The so-called First Triumvirate (B.C. 60), composed of Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey, was formed for the purpose of advancing the selfish interests of its members. Caesar wished to extend his power, Crassus to increase his wealth, Pompey to secure his hold on the East. With the help of Crassus and Pompey, Caesar was elected consul for the year B.C. 59. The Senate, influenced by Crassus and Pompey, voted that Caesar as proconsul should have as his province Gallia Cisalpina, Gallia Transalpina, and Illyricum, with an army of four legions — an arrangement that was to hold good for five years.

Caesar thereupon set out to subdue Gaul, the narrative of which he has given us in his *Commentaries on the Gallic War*. The five-year period proved too short for the purpose, and hence an additional five years was granted, while Spain was allotted to Pompey, and Syria to Crassus. Pompey remained at Rome and governed his province through trusted lieutenants. Crassus proceeded to Syria, where he was killed in battle, B.C. 53.

Caesar's proconsulship was to expire at the end of B.C. 49, and wishing to stand for his second consulship in that year, he had arranged with Pompey that he should candidate for the office even though absent from the city. But Pompey, growing jealous of Caesar's marked success in Gaul and Britain, joined the aristocratic (senatorial) party and induced the Senate to decree that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen some months before the expiration of his second five-year term.

Knowing that he would not be safe at Rome, where Pompey was in supreme command, Caesar refused to obey, and taking but a single legion, crossed the Rubicon, which bounded his province, and

marched towards Rome. Thus the Civil War was begun. As he advanced, many cities submitted, while Pompey, dismayed at this evidence of Caesar's power, hastened to Brundisium and thence to Macedonia.

Caesar turned his attention to his enemies in the West. With Spain, Sicily, Sardinia, and Italy won, he returned to Rome and assumed the dictatorship, to which he had been appointed in his absence.

At this point the following selections take up the story.

Caesar is elected consul.

1. Dictātōre habente comitia Caesare cōsulēs creantur Iūlius Caesar et P. Servilius; is enim erat annus, quō per lēgēs eī cōsulem¹ fieri liceret.



Pompey

Caesar resigns the dictatorship and goes to Brundisium.

- 5 2. His rēbus et fēriis Latinis comitiisque omnibus perficiendis xi diēs tribuit² dictātūrāque sē abdicat et ab urbe proficiscitur Brundisiumque pervenit.

Eō legiōnēs xii, equitātum omnem venīre iusserat. Sed
10 tantum³ nāvium reperit, ut angustē xv milia legiōnāri-
ōrum militum, dc equitēs trāsportāre possent. Hoc
ūnum Caesarī ad celeritātem cōficiendī bellī dēfuit.

dictātor, dictātōris, m., *dictator*.
comitia, -ōrum, n., *election*.
fēriae, -ārum, f., *festival*.

dictātūra, -ae, f., *dictatorship*.
abdicō, i, *resign*.
angustē, *scarcely, by crowding*.

1. Pred. acc. agreeing with implied subject of fieri.

2. *assigned*.

3. *so few*.

Meanwhile Pompey has collected an enormous army.

3. Pompēius annum spatium ad comparandās cōpiās nactus, quod vacuum ā bellō atque ab hoste ōtiōsum fuerat, magnam ex Asiā Cycladibusque insulis, Corcyrā, Athēnis, Pontō, Bithyniā, Syriā, Ciliciā, Phoenicē, Aegyptō classem coēgerat, magnam omnibus locis aedificandam cūrāverat.

Caesar addresses his troops, and crosses to Palaeste.

6. Caesar, ut Brundisium vēnit, cōtiōnātus apud milītēs, quoniam prope ad finem labōrum ac periculōrum esset perventum, aequō animō mancipia atque impedi-
10 menta in Italiā relinquerent,¹ ipsi expediti nāvēs cōnscenderent, quō maior numerus militem posset impōnī, omniaque ex victoriā et ex suā liberālitate spērarent, conclāmantibus omnibus, imperāret,² quod vellet, quodcumque imperāvisset, sē aequō animō esse factūrōs, II
15 Nōn. Iān. nāvēs³ solvit. Impositae,⁴ ut suprā dēmōstrātum est, legiōnēs VII. Postridiē terram attigit Germiniōrum. Saxa inter⁵ et alia loca periculōsa⁶ quiētam nactus statiōnem et portūs omnēs timēns, quod tenērī ab adversāriis arbitrābantur,⁷ ad eum locum, quī appellā-
20 bātur Palaestē, omnibus nāvibus ad ūnam incolumibus milītēs exposuit.

annuus, -a, -um; cf. annus.

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, *undisturbed*.

cōtiōnor, I, *address*.

mancipium, -ī, n., *slave*.

Nōnae, -ārum, f., *the Nones*, the

seventh of March, May, July, and October, the fifth of the other months.

Iānuārius, -a, -um, *of January*.

expōnō; cf. pōnō.

1. (cōtiōnātus) relinquerent, etc., (*urging*) that they should leave, etc.

2. Depends on conclāmantibus, just as relinquerent depends on cōtiōnātus above.

3. nāvēs solvit: *set sail*.

4. Sc. sunt.

5. Its position after the noun is unusual.

6. *dangerous*.

7. Here passive in meaning.

Both Caesar and Pompey hasten to reach Dyrrhachium. Pompey gains the town and both go into winter quarters.

13. At Pompēius, cōgnitis his rēbus, Dyrrhachiō timēns, diurnis eō nocturnisque itineribus contendit. Simul Caesar appropinquāre dicēbātur, tantusque terror incidit eius exercituī, quod properāns noctem diēi
 5 coniūnxerat¹ neque iter intermiserat,¹ ut paene omnēs ex Ēpirō finitimisque regiōnibus signa relinquerent, complūrēs arma prōicerent ac fugae simile iter vidērētur. Sed cum prope Dyrrhachium Pompēius cōstitisset castraque mētārī iussisset, perterritō etiam tum exercitū
 10 princeps² Labiēnus prōcēdit³ iūratque sē eum nōn dēsertūrum eundemque cāsum subitūrum, quemcumque⁴ ei⁵ fortūna tribuisset. Hoc idem reliquī iūrant lēgātī; tribūnī militum centuriōnēsque sequuntur, atque idem omnis exercitus iūrat. Caesar praeoccupātō⁶ itinere ad
 15 Dyrrhachium finem properandī facit castraque ad flūmen Apsum pōnit in finibus Apollōniātium, ut castellis vigiliisque bene meritaē civitatēs tūtā⁷ essent, ibique reliquārum⁸ ex Ītaliā legiōnum adventum exspectāre et sub pellibus hiemāre cōstituit. Hoc idem Pompēius
 20 fēcit et trāns flūmen Apsum positīs castris eō cōpiās omnēs auxiliaque condūxit.

Caesar's effort for peace is defeated.

19. Inter bīna castra Pompēi atque Caesaris ūnum flūmen intererat Apsus, crēbraque inter sē colloquia

diurnus, -a, -um, of the or by day. mētor, I, measure off.

iūrō, I, swear, take an oath.

1. The subject is Pompey.

2. = *primus*.

3. *advanced*.

4. -que: *but*.

5. *i.e.* Pompey.

6. *praeoccupātō itinere: since Pompey had got the start of him.*

7. *protected*.

8. *reliquārum legiōnum: those at Brundisium.*

SECOND YEAR LATIN—8

113

mīlitēs habēbant, neque ūllum interim tēlum per
 pactiōnēs loquentium trāiciēbātur. Mittit¹ P. Vatinium
 lēgātum ad rīpam ipsam flūminis, quī ea, quae maximē
 ad pācem pertinēre vidērentur, ageret et crēbrō magnā
 5 vōce prōnūtiāret, licēretne² cīvibus ad cīvēs dē pāce
 tūtō lēgātōs mittere, quod etiam fugitivis³ ab saltū
 Pŷrēnaeō praedōnibusque⁴ licuisset, praesertim cum⁵
 id agerent, nē cīvēs cum cīvibus armīs dēcertārent?
 Multa suppliciter locūtus est, ut dē suā atque omnium
 10 salūte dēbēbat, silentiōque ab utrīsque militibus auditus.
 Respōnsum est ab alterā parte Aulum Varrōnem pro-
 fitērī sē alterō diē ad colloquium ventūrum atque eundem
 vīsūrum,⁶ quemadmodum tūtō lēgātī venīre et quae
 vellent expōnere possent, certumque eī reī tempus cōn-
 15 stituitur. Quō cum esset posterō diē ventum, magna
 utrimque multitudō convēnit, magnaque erat exspectātiō
 eius reī, atque omnium animī intentī⁷ esse ad pācem
 vidēbantur. Quā ex frequentīā Titus Labiēnus prōdit,
 summissā⁸ ōrātiōne dē pāce loquī atque altercārī cum
 20 Vatiniō incipit. Quōrum mediam certātiōnem inter-

pactiō, pactiōnis, f., *agreement*.

crēbrō, adv.; cf. crēber.

saltus, -ūs, m., *mountain glade*.

praedō, praedōnis, m., *pirate*.

profiteor, -ērī, -fessus sum, *declare openly*.

utrimque, *on each side*.

altercor, i, *dispute*.

certātiō, certātiōnis, f., *strife, debate*.

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum;
 cf. perrumpō.

1. Sc. Caesar as subject.

2. (*asking*) *whether it was not allowable*.

3. Refers to the remnants of Sertorius' army in Spain (B.C. 72).

4. In the war with the pirates (B.C. 66).

5. cum . . . agerent: *since they were working to this end*.

6. vīsūrum . . . possent: *would see how commissioners might be able, etc.*

7. bent upon.

8. summissā ōrātiōne: *in a calm speech*.

rumpunt subitō undique tēla immissa; quae ille¹ ob-
tēctus armīs mīlitum vitāvit; vulnerantur tamen com-
plūrēs, in hīs Cornēlius Balbus, M. Plōtius, L. Tiburtius,
centuriōnēs militēsque nōnnūllī. Tum Labiēnus:
5 ‘Dēsinite ergō dē compositiōne loquī; nam nōbīs nisi
Caesaris capite relātō pāx esse nūlla potest.’

*Caesar's troops which were left at Brundisium under Antony and Calenus,
acting under orders, cross to Greece.*

26. Illī² adhibitā audāciā et virtūte administrantibus
M. Antōniō et Fūfiō Calēnō, multum ipsīs mīlitibus hor-
tantibus neque ūllum perīculum prō salūte Caesaris re-
10 cūsantibus nactī austrum nāvēs solvunt atque alterō diē
Apollōniam praetervehuntur. Quī cum essent ex con-
tinentī³ visī, Cōpōnius, quī Dyrrhachī classī Rhodiae⁴
praeerat, nāvēs ex portū ēdūcit, et cum iam nostrīs re-
missiōre⁵ ventō appropinquāssent, idem auster incrēbuit
15 nostrisque praesidiō fuit. Neque vērō ille ob eam
causam cōnātū⁶ dēsistēbat, sed labōre et perseverantiā
nautārum sē vim tempestātis superāre posse spērābat
praetervectōsque Dyrrhachium magnā vī ventī nihilō
sētius sequēbātur. Nostrī ūsī fortunae beneficiō tamen
20 impetum classis⁷ timēbant, si⁸ forte ventus remisisset.

obtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *pro-
tect.*

dēsino, -ere, dēsīi, dēsitum, *cease.*
compositiō, compositiōnis, f.,
settlement.

auster, austrī, m., *south wind.*

praetervehor, -ī, -vectus sum, *be
carried by, sail by.*

incrēbescō, -ere, -crēbuī, —, *increase.*

perseverantia, -ae, f., *persistency.*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.*

1. *i.e.* Vatinius.

2. *i.e.* Caesar's troops at
Brundisium.

3. Sc. terrā: *mainland.*

4. Adj. with classī.

5. *milder.*

6. Cf. cōnor.

7. Subjective genitive.

8. si . . . remisisset: *if the
wind should die down.*

Nactī portum, quī appellātur Nymphaeum, ultrā Lissum milia passuum III, eō nāvēs intrōdūxērunt (quī portus ab Āfricō tegēbātur, ab austrō nōn erat tūtus) leviusque tempestātis quam classis¹ periculum aestimāverunt.
 5 Quō simulatque intrō est itum, incredibīlī felicitāte² auster, quī per biduum flāverat,³ in Āfricum sē vertit.

Both Caesar and Pompey advance toward Antony. Caesar joins Antony, and Pompey encamps.

30. Haec eōdem ferē tempore Caesar atque Pompēius cōgnōscunt. Nam praetervectās Apollōniam Dyrrhachiumque nāvēs viderant, ipsī iter secundum⁴ eās terrā
 10 dīrēxerant, sed quō essent eae dēlātae, primīs diēbus ignōrābant. Cōgnitāque rē dīversa⁵ sibi ambō⁶ cōnsilia capiunt: Caesar, ut quam primum sē cum Antōniō coniungeret; Pompēius, ut venientibus⁷ in itinere sē oppōneret, sī⁸ imprudentēs⁷ ex insidiis adorīri posset,
 15 eōdemque diē uterque eōrum ex castris stativīs ā flūmine Apsō exercitum ēdūcunt⁹: Pompēius clam et noctū, Caesar palam¹⁰ atque interdiū.¹¹ Sed Caesarī circuitū¹² maiōre iter erat longius adversō¹³ flūmine, ut vadō trānsire posset: Pompēius, quia expeditō itinere flūmen
 20 eī trānseundum nōn erat, magnīs itineribus ad Antōnium

Āfricus, -i, m., *southwest wind*.

leviter, adv.; cf. levis.

aestimō, I, *estimate*.

intrō, adv., *within*.

dīrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *direct*.

ignōrō, I, *not know*.

stativus, -a, -um, *permanent*.

1. *i.e.* Pompey's.

2. *good fortune*.

3. *had blown*.

4. Prep., *following, abreast of*.

5. *different*.

6. *both*.

7. Refer to Antony's men.

8. *(to see) if*.

9. Note the singular subject.

10. *openly*.

11. *by day*.

12. circuitū maiōre: *explains iter longius*.

13. adversō flūmine: *up the river*.

contendit atque eum ubi appropinquāre cōgnōvit, idō-
neum locum nactus, ibi cōpiās collocāvit suōsque om-
nēs in castris continuit ignēsque fieri prohibuit, quō occul-
tior esset eius adventus. Haec ad Antōnium statim
5 per Graecōs dēferuntur. Ille missis ad Caesarem
nūntiis ūnum diem sēsē castris tenuit; alterō diē ad eum
pervēnit Caesar. Cuius adventū cōgnitō Pompēius, nē
duōbus circumclūderētur exercitibus, ex eō locō discēdit
omnibusque cōpiis ad Asparāgium Dyrrhachīnōrum
10 pervenit atque ibi idōneō locō castra pōnit.

Caesar fails to lure Pompey to fight, but cuts him off from Dyrrhachium.

41. Caesar, postquam Pompēium ad Asparāgium esse
cōgnōvit, eōdem¹ cum exercitū profectus expugnātō in
itinere oppidō Parthīnōrum, in quō Pompēius praesidium
habēbat, tertiō diē ad Pompēium pervēnit iūxtāque²
15 eum castra posuit et postridiē ēductis omnibus cōpiis
aciē instrūctā dēcernendī³ potestātem Pompēiō fēcit.
Ubi illum suis locis sē tenēre animadvertit, reductō in
castra exercitū, aliud sibi cōnsilium capiendum existi-
māvit. Itaque posterō diē omnibus cōpiis magnō cir-
20 cuitū difficilī angustōque itinere Dyrrhachium profectus
est spērāns Pompēium aut Dyrrhachium compelli aut ab
eō interclūdī posse, quod omnem commeātum tōtiusque
belli apparātum eō contulisset;⁴ ut⁵ accidit. Pom-
pēius enim primō ignōrāns eius cōnsilium, quod diversō
25 ab eā regiōne itinere profectum⁶ vidēbat, angustiis⁷ rei

apparātus, -ūs, m., *equipment*.

1. *to the same place.*

2. *close to.*

3. *of fighting a decisive com-
bat.*

4. The subject is Pompey.

5. *ut accidit: and so it turned
out.*

6. *profectum (esse): sc. Cae-
sarem.*

7. *scarcity, abl. of cause.*

frūmentāriae compulsum discessisse existimābat; postea per explorātōrēs certior factus posterō diē castra mōvit breviorē itinere sē occurrere ei posse spērāns. Quod fore suspicātus Caesar milītēsque adhortātus, ut aequō
 5 animō labōrem ferrent, parvā parte noctis itinere intermissō māne¹ Dyrrhachium vēnit, cum primum agmen Pompēi procul cernerētur, atque ibi castra posuit.

Caesar arranges for food supply.

42. Pompēius interclūsus Dyrrhachiō, ubi prōpositum tenēre nōn potuit, secundō² ūsus cōsiliō ēditō locō,
 10 quī appellātur Petra aditumque habet nāvibus medio-crem³ atque eās ā quibusdam prōtegit ventis, castra commūnit. Eō partem nāvium longārū convenīre, frūmentum commeātumque ab Asiā atque omnibus regiōnibus, quās tenēbat, comportārī imperat.⁴ Caesar
 15 longius bellum ductum iri existimāns et dē Italicis commeātibus dēspērāns, quod tantā dīligentiā omnia **litora** ā Pompēiānis tenēbantur, classēsque ipsius, quās hieme in Siciliā, Galliā, Italiā fēcerat,⁵ morābantur, in Epīrum rei frūmentāriae causā Q. Tillium et L. Canulēium lēgā-
 20 tum misit, quodque hae regiōnēs aberant longius, locis certis horrea cōstituit vectūrāsque frūmentī finitimis civitatibus dēscripsit. Item Lissō⁶ Parthinisque et omnibus castellis quod esset frūmentī conquīrī⁷ iussit. Id erat perexiguū cum⁸ ipsius agrī nātūrā, quod sunt

prōpositum, -ī, n., *purpose*.

lītus, litoris, n., *shore*.

horreum, -ī, n., *storehouse*.

vectūra, -ae, f., *transportation*.

dēscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *assign*.

perexiguus, -a, -um, *very small, very little*.

1. *early in the morning*.

2. *alternative*.

3. *fairly good*.

4. Here used with acc. and inf., an unusual construction.

5. = faciendās cūrāverat.

6. Lissō, etc.: ablatives.

7. *to be collected*.

8. cum . . . tum: *not only . . . but also*.

loca aspera ¹ ac montuōsa ac plērumque frūmentō ūtuntur importātō, tum quod Pompēius haec ² prōvīderat et superiōribus diēbus praedae locō Parthinōs habuerat frūmentumque omne conquisitum spoliātis ³ effossisque ⁴
 5 eōrum domibus per equitēs comportārat.

Caesar hems in Pompey with a line of fortresses.

43. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar cōnsilium capit ex loci nātūrā. Erant enim circum castra Pompēi permultī ēditī atque asperī collēs. Hōs primum praesidiis tenuit castellaque ibi commūnit. Inde, ut loci cuiusque
 10 nātūra ferēbat,⁵ ex castellō in castellum perductā mūnitiōne circumvallāre Pompēium instituit, haec ⁶ spectāns, quod angustā rē frūmentāriā ūtēbatur,⁷ quodque Pompēius multitudīne equitum valēbat, quō minōre periculō undique frūmentum commeātumque exercituī supportāre
 15 posset, simul, utī pābulātiōne Pompēium prohibēret equitātumque eius ad rem gerendam inūtilem efficeret, tertiō, ut auctōritātem, quā ille ⁸ maximē apud exterās nātiōnēs nitī ⁹ vidēbatur,¹⁰ minueret, cum fāma per orbem terrārum percrēbuisset illum ā Caesare obsidērī neque
 20 audēre proeliō dīmicāre.

montuōsus, -a, -um, *mountainous*.
 pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis, f., *foraging*.

percrēbescō, -ere, -crēbuī, —, *become very frequent, be spread*.

1. *rough*.
2. *haec prōvīderat: had foreseen this move*.
3. *stripped*.
4. *undermined*.
5. = *postulābat*.

6. Explained by clauses *quō . . . posset*, etc.
7. *found*.
8. *i.e. Pompey*.
9. *rely on*.
10. *was seen*.

Pompey builds counter fortifications and harasses Caesar's men while they are at work.

44. Pompēius neque ā marī Dyrrhachiōque discēdere volēbat, quod omnem apparātum bellī, tēla, arma, tormenta ibi collocāverat frūmentumque exercituī nāvibus supportābat, neque mūnitiōnēs Caesaris prohibēre
 5 poterat, nisi proeliō dēcertāre vellet; quod eō tempore statuerat nōn esse faciendum. Relinquēbātur,¹ ut extrēmam² ratiōnem bellī sequēns quam plūrimōs collēs occupāret et quam lātissimās regiōnēs praesidiis tenēret Caesarisque cōpiās, quam maximē posset, distinēret;
 10 idque accidit. Castellis enim xxiv effectīs xv mīlia passuum circuitū amplexus hōc spatiō pābulābātur; multaque erant intrā eum locum manū sata;³ quibus interim iūmenta pāsceret.⁴ Atque ut nostrī perpetuās⁵ mūnitiōnēs habēbant, perductās ex castellis in proxima
 15 castella, nē quō locō ērumperent Pompēiānī ac nostrōs post tergum adorīrentur, ita illī interiōre spatiō perpetuās mūnitiōnēs efficiēbant, nē quem locum nostrī intrāre atque ipsōs ā tergō circumvenīre possent. Sed illi⁶ operibus⁷ vincēbant, quod et numerō militum
 20 praestābant et interiōre spatiō⁸ minōrem circuitum habēbant. Quārē cum⁹ erant loca Caesarī capiēda, etsi prohibēre Pompēius tōtis cōpiis et dīmīcāre nōn cōn-

amplector, -ī, -plexus sum, *sur-* intrō, I, *enter*.
round.

1. The subject is the clause ut, etc.

2. extrēmam ratiōnem: the last resort.

3. planted.

4. could feed.

5. continuous.

6. i.e. the Pompeians.

7. in (pushing) their fortifications.

8. Abl. of cause.

9. cum . . . capiēda: whenever Caesar had to seize new places.

stituerat, tamen suis¹ locis sagittariōs² funditorēsque mittēbat, quōrum magnum habēbat numerum, multique ex nostris vulnerābantur, magnusque incesserat timor sagittarum, atque omnēs ferē militēs aut ex coactis aut
 5 ex centōnibus aut ex coriis tunicās aut tegimenta³ fēcerant, quibus tēla vitārent.⁴

Caesar's troops retire from a skirmish with slight loss.

46. Nostrī vērō, quī satis⁵ habēbant sine dētrīmentō discēdere, complūribus⁶ interfectis v omnīnō suōrum āmissis quiētissimē sē recēpērunt pauloque citrā eum
 10 locum morātī aliis comprehēnsis collibus mūnitiōnēs perfēcērunt.

Pompey has abundant supplies while Caesar suffers from want.

47. Erat nova et inūsītata⁷ bellī ratiō cum tot castellōrum numerō⁸ tantōque spatiō et tantis mūnitiōnibus et tōtō obsidiōnis genere, tum etiam reliquīs rēbus.
 15 Nam⁹ quicumque alterum¹⁰ obsidēre cōnāti sunt, percussōs atque infirmōs hostēs adortī aut proeliō superātōs aut aliquā offēnsiōne¹¹ permōtōs continuērunt,¹² cum

incēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum, *come*

up, arise.

coāctum, -ī, n., *felt.*

centō, centōnis, m., *matting.*

corium, -ī, -n., *hide.*

tunica, -ae, f., *shirt.*

perculsus, -a, -um, *upset, disconcerted.*

1. suis locis: *favorable places.*

2. sagittariōs funditorēsque: *bowmen and slingers.*

3. coverings.

4. escape.

5. satis habēbant: *deemed it sufficient.*

6. i.e. of the enemy.

7. unusual.

8. numerō, etc.: *abls. of specification.*

9. nam . . . prohibērent: a statement of a general truth; therefore praestārent and prohibērent should be translated by the present tense.

10. his opponent.

11. defeat.

12. kept in check.

ipsi numerō equitum militumque praestarent; causa¹ autem obsidiōnis haec ferē esse cōsuēvit, ut frūmentō hostēs prohiberent. At² tum integrās atque incolumēs cōpiās Caesar inferiōre militum numerō continēbat,³ cum
 5 illi omnium rerum cōpiā abundarent; cotidiē enim magnus undique nāvium numerus conveniēbat, quae comēatū supportarent, neque ūllus flāre⁴ ventus poterat, quī⁵ aliquā ex parte secundum cursum habērent. Ipse⁶ autem cōsūptis omnibus longē lātēque frū-
 10 mentis summīs erat in angustiis. Sed tamen haec singulārī patientiā militēs ferēbant. Recordābantur enim eadem sē superiōre annō in Hispāniā perpressos labōre et patientiā maximum bellum cōnfēcisse, meminerant⁷ ad Alesiam magnam sē inopiam perpressos, multō etiam
 15 maiōrem ad Avaricum maximārum sē gentium victōrēs discessisse. Nōn,⁸ illis hordeum cum darētur, nōn legūmina recūsābant; pecus vērō, cuius rei summa erat ex Ēpirō cōpia, magnō in honōre habēbant.

A substitute for bread is found.

48. Est etiam genus rādīcis inventum ab iis, quī vacā-
 20 bant ab operibus, quod appellātur chara, quod admix-

recordor, I, *call to mind, remember, recollect.*
 perpetior, -ī, -pessus sum, *endure.*
 hordeum, -ī, n., *barley.*

legūmen, legūminis, n., *bean.*
 chara, -ae, f., *chara, a kind of wild vegetable.*
 admisceō, -ēre, -miscuī, -mixtum, *mixed with.*

1. causa . . . cōsuēvit, ut: *moreover the purpose of such a blockade has generally been this, that.*

2. at tum: *but on this occasion.*

3. *tried to keep in check.*

4. *to blow.*

5. quī . . . habērent: *lit. but that they had a favorable wind from some quarter.*

6. *i.e. Caesar.*

7. *remembered.*

8. nōn, illis hordeum cum darētur = hordeum nōn recūsābant cum darētur.

tum lacte multum inopiam levābat.¹ Id ad similitūdinem² pānis efficiēbant. Eius erat magna cōpia. Ex hōc effectōs pānēs, cum in colloquiis Pompēiāni famem³ nostris obiectārent, vulgō in eōs iaciēbant, ut spem eōrum
5 minuerent.

Pompey's army suffers from want of food and water.

49. Iamque frūmenta mātūrēscere incipiēbant, atque ipsa spēs inopiam sustentābat,⁴ quod celeriter sē habitūrōs cōpiam cōfidēbant; crēbraeque vōcēs militum in vigiliis colloquiisque audiēbantur, prius sē cortice⁵ ex
10 arboribus victūrōs,⁶ quam Pompēium ē manibus dīmīsūrōs. Libenter⁷ etiam ex perfugīs cōgnōscēbant equōs eōrum⁸ tolerārī,⁹ reliqua vērō iūmenta interīsse; ūtī autem ipsōs¹⁰ valētūdine nōn bonā, cum angustīs locī et odōre taetrō ex multitūdine cadāverum¹¹ et cotidiānis
15 labōribus insuētōs¹² operum, tum aquae summā inopiā affectōs.¹³ Omnia enim flūmina atque omnēs rīvōs,¹⁴ quī ad mare pertinēbant, Caesar aut āverterat aut magnis operibus obstrūxerat,¹⁵ atque ut erant loca montuōsa et aditūs perangustī vallium, hās¹⁶ sublicīs¹⁷ in terram

pānis, pānis, m., *bread.*

obiectō, I, *throw up at, taunt with.*

mātūrēscō, -ere, mātūrui, —, *begin to ripen.*

odor, odōris, m., *stench.*

taeter, taetra, taetrum, *foul.*

1. *relieved.*

2. *likeness.*

3. *hunger.*

4. *made bearable.*

5. *bark.*

6. *live.*

7. *gladly.*

8. *i.e. Pompey's men.*

9. *kept alive.*

10. Subject of ūtī.

11. *dead bodies.*

12. insuētōs operum: *being unused to work.*

13. afflicted: agrees with ipsōs and is modified by the abl. of cause.

14. *brooks.*

15. *stopped.*

16. *i.e. vallēs.*

17. *stakes.*

dēmissis praesaepserat¹ terramque adiēcerat, ut aquam contineret. Ita illi necessariō loca sequi dēmissa² ac palūstria et puteōs³ fodere⁴ cōgēbantur atque hunc labōrem ad cotidiāna opera addēbant; quī tamen fontēs
 5 ā quibusdam praesidiis aberant longius et celeriter aestibus exārēscēbant. At Caesaris exercitus optimā valētūdine summāque aquae cōpiā utēbatur, tum⁵ commeātūs omni genere praeter frūmentum abundābat, cuius cotidiē melius succedere tempus maiōremque spem mā-
 10 tūrītate frūmentōrum prōpōni vidēbant.

Night attacks are made on Caesar's troops.

50. In novō genere bellī novae ab utrisque bel-
 landi ratiōnēs⁶ reperiēbantur. Illi, cum animadvertis-
 sent ex ignibus nocte cohortēs nostrās ad mūnitiōnēs
 excubāre, silentiō aggressi ūniversi intrā multitudinem
 15 sagittās coniciēbant et sē cōnfestim ad suōs recipiēbant.
 Quibus rēbus nostrī ūsū docti haec reperiēbant remedia,
 ut aliō locō ignēs facerent aliō excubārent. . . .

Sulla's arrival drives the Pompeians off.

51. Interim certior factus P. Sūlla, quem discēdēns ca-
 stris praefēcerat Caesar, auxiliō cohorti vēnit cum legiōni-
 20 bus duābus; cuius adventū facile sunt repulsi Pompēiāni.
 Neque vērō cōspectum aut impetum nostrōrum tulērunt,
 primisque dēiectis reliqui sē vertērunt et locō cessērunt.

palūster, -tris, -tre, *swampy*,
marshy.

fōns, fontis, m., *spring*, *well*.

exārēscō, -ere, -āruī, —, *dry up*.

abundō, i, *abound*.

mātūrītās, mātūrītātis, f.; cf. mā-
 tūrus.

excubō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitum,
keep watch.

remedium, -i, n., *help*.

1. *blocked up*.

2. *low*.

3. *wells*.

4. *dig*.

5. *and then too*.

6. *methods*.

Sed insequentēs nostrōs, nē longius prōsequerentur, Sūlla revocāvit. At plērique exīstimant, sī ācrius īnsequī voluisset, bellum eō diē potuisse¹ finīre. Cuius cōnsilium reprehendendum nōn vidētur. Aliae² enim sunt lēgātī
 5 partēs atque imperātōris: alter omnia agere ad³ praescriptum,⁴ alter liberē⁵ ad summam⁶ rērum cōnsulere dēbet.

Six engagements bring losses to both sides. Caesar rewards his men.

53. Ūnō diē vi proeliis factis, tribus ad Dyrrhachium, tribus ad mūnitiōnēs, cum hōrum omnium ratiō⁷ habērētur, ad⁸ duo milia numerō ex Pompēianis cecidisse
 10 reperiēbāmus, ēvocātōs⁹ centuriōnēsque complūrēs (in eō fuit numerō Valerius Flaccus, L. filius, eius, quī praetor Asiam obtinuerat); signaque sunt militāria vi relāta. Nostrī nōn amplius xx omnibus sunt proeliis dēsiderāti.¹⁰ Sed in castellō nēmō fuit omninō militum,
 15 quīn vulnerārētur, quattuorque ex ūnā cohorte centuriōnēs oculōs āmisērunt. Et cum labōris suī periculique testimoniū afferre vellent, milia sagittārum circiter xxx in castellum coniecta Caesarī renūntiāvērunt, scūtōque ad eum relātō Scaevae centuriōnis inventa sunt in
 20 eō forāmina cxx. Quem¹¹ Caesar, ut erat dē sē meritis et dē rē publicā, dōnātum¹² milibus¹³ cc . . . collaudātumque ab octāvis ordinibus ad prīmipilum sē trādūcere¹⁴

forāmen, forāminis, n., *hole*.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Sc. Sūllam as subject. | 9. <i>veterans</i> ; appositive with |
| 2. <i>aliae</i> atque: <i>different</i> | <i>milia</i> . |
| <i>from</i> . | 10. <i>lost</i> . |
| 3. <i>according to</i> . | 11. Obj. of trādūcere. |
| 4. <i>instructions</i> . | 12. <i>presented with</i> ; agrees with |
| 5. <i>freely</i> . | quem, as does also collaudātum. |
| 6. <i>summam rērum</i> : <i>general</i> | 13. <i>milibus</i> cc: sc. sēstertium. |
| <i>interests</i> . | 200,000 sesterces equals some- |
| 7. <i>reckoning</i> . | thing like \$8000. |
| 8. <i>about</i> , adv. | 14. <i>promote</i> . |

prōnūntiāvit (eius enim ope¹ castellum magnā ex parte cōservātum esse cōstābat²) cohortemque postea duplici stipendiō, frūmentō, veste,³ congiāriis militāribusque dōnis amplissimē dōnāvit.

Because of scarcity of fodder, Pompey plans to force the blockade.

- 5 58. Caesar, quō facilius equitātum Pompēianum ad Dyrrhachium contineret et pābulātiōne prohiberet, adi-
tūs duōs, quōs esse angustōs dēmōnstrāvimus, magnis
operibus praemūnivit castellaque his locis posuit. Pom-
pēius, ubi nihil prōfici⁴ equitātū cōgnōvit, paucis inter-
10 missis diēbus rūrsum eum⁵ nāvibus ad sē intrā mūni-
tīōnēs recipit. Erat summa inopia pābuli,⁶ adeō⁷ ut
foliis⁸ ex arboribus strictis et teneris⁹ harundinum rādī-
cibus⁸ contūsīs equōs alerent¹⁰ (frūmenta enim, quae
fuerant intrā mūnitiōnēs sata,¹¹ cōsūmpserant); cōgē-
15 bantur Corcyrā atque Acarnāniā longō interiectō nāvigā-
tīōnis spatiō pābulum supportāre, quodque erat eius rei
minor¹² cōpia, hordeō adaugēre atque his ratiōnibus
equitātum tolerāre. Sed postquam nōn modo hordeum
pābulumque omnibus locis herbaeque dēsectae,¹³ sed
20 etiam frōns¹⁴ ex arboribus dēficiēbat, corruptis¹⁵ equīs

congiārium, -ī, n., *reward*.

folium, -ī, n., *leaf*.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum,
pluck.

harundō, harundinis, f., *reed*.

contundō, -ere, -tudī, -tūsum,
bruise.

adaugeō, -ēre, -auxī, -auctum; cf.
augeō.

herba, -ae, f., *grass*.

1. *help*.

2. *it was clear*.

3. *clothing*.

4. *accomplished*.

5. = *equitātum*.

6. *fodder*.

7. *to such a degree*.

8. Ablatives of means with

alerent.

9. *tender*.

10. *had to feed*.

11. *sown*.

12. *too small*.

13. *cut down*.

14. *foliage*.

15. *emaciated*.

māciē cōnandum sibi aliquid Pompēius dē ēruptione existimāvit.

Two brothers who have received many favors from Caesar are charged by the troopers with dishonesty.

59. Erant apud Caesarem ex equitum numerō Allobrogēs duo frātrēs, Raucillus et Egus, Adbucilli filiī,
 5 quī principātum in civitāte multis¹ annīs obtinuerat, singulārī virtūte hominēs, quōrum operā² Caesar omnibus Gallicis bellis optimā fortissimāque erat ūsus. His domī ob hās causās amplissimōs magistrātūs mandāverat
 10 verat agrōsque in Galliā ex hostibus captōs praemiaque rei⁵ pecūniāriae magna tribuerat⁶ locuplētēsque ex egentibus⁷ fēcerat. Hī propter virtūtem nōn solum apud Caesarem in honōre erant, sed etiam apud exercitum cārī⁸ habēbantur: sed frēti⁹ amicitia Caesaris et
 15 stultā ac barbarā arrogantia ēlāti dēspiciēbant suōs stipendiumque equitum fraudābant et praedam omnem domum¹⁰ āvertēbant. Quibus illi¹¹ rēbus permōti universi Caesarem adiērunt palamque¹² dē eōrum iniūriis sunt questī et ad cētera addidērunt falsum ab his¹³

māciēs, —, abl. māciē, f., *lack of fodder.*

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose.*

locuplēs, locuplētis, *rich.*

stultus, -a, -um, *foolish.*

fraudō, I, *steal.*

1. multis annīs: abl. of time within which, but to be translated like acc. of extent.

2. operā optimā erat ūsus: *aid Caesar had found very useful.*

3. extrā ordinem: *outside the regular routine.*

4. in senātum: *as members of the senate (of the Allobroges).*

5. rei pecūniāriae: *money.*

6. *had given.*

7. *poor.*

8. *dear.*

9. *relying.*

10. domum āvertēbant: *i.e. appropriated.*

11. *i.e. the cavalymen.*

12. *openly.*

13. *i.e. the two brothers.*

equitum numerum dēferri, quōrum stipendium āverterent.

Caesar censures them and they return to Pompey.

60. Caesar neque tempus illud animadversiōnis esse existimāns et multa virtūtī eōrum concēdēns rem tōtam
 5 distulit; illōs sēcrētō castigāvit, quod quaestuī¹ equitēs habērent, monuitque, ut ex suā amicitīā omnia expectārent et ex² praeteritis suis officiīs reliqua³ spērārent. Magnam tamen haec rēs illis offēnsiōnem⁴ et contemptiōnem ad⁵ omnēs attulit, idque⁶ ita esse cum ex
 10 aliōrum obiectātiōnibus tum etiam ex domesticō⁷ iūdicīo atque animī⁸ cōnscientiā intellegēbant. Quō pudōre adductī et⁹ fortasse nōn sē liberārī, sed in aliud tempus reservārī arbitrātī discēdere ā nōbis et novam temptāre fortūnam novāsque amicitīas experiri cōstituērunt. Et
 15 cum paucis collocūtī clientibus suis, quibus tantum facinus¹⁰ committere audēbant, primum cōnātī sunt praefectum equitum C. Volusēnum interficere, ut postea bellō cōfectō cōgnitum est, ut cum¹¹ mūnere aliquō perfūgisse ad Pompēium vidērentur; postquam id dif-
 20 ficilius vīsum est neque facultās perficiendī dabātur, quam maximās potuērunt pecūniās mūtuātī, proinde¹² ac

animadversio, animadversionis, f.,
consideration, attention, punishment.

castigo, 1, *punish.*

obiectatio, obiectationis, f., *reproach.*

fortasse, *perhaps.*

mūtuor, 1, *borrow.*

1. quaestui habērent: *used for gain.*

2. ex . . . officiis: *in accordance with his past favors.*

3. future (favors).

4. discredits.

5. in the eyes of.

6. id ita esse: *it to be such.*

7. their own.

8. animi cōnscientiā: *guilty conscience.*

9. Connects adducti and arbitrati.

10. deed.

11. cum mūnere: *carrying some favor, i.e. the death of Volusenus.*

12. proinde ac: *just as though.*

suīs satisfacere¹ et fraudatā restituere vellent, multis coëmptis² equis ad Pompēium trāsiērunt cum iīs, quōs suī cōnsiliī participēs habēbant.

Pompey gladly receives them and they inform him about Caesar and his army.

61. Quōs³ Pompēius, quod erant honestō⁴ locō nātī
5 et instrūctī liberāliter magnōque comitatū et multis iūmentis vēnerant virīque fortēs habēbantur et in honōre apud Caesarem fuerant, quodque⁵ novum et praeter cōnsuētūdinem acciderat, omnia sua praesidia⁶ circumdūxit atque ostentāvit.⁷ Nam ante id tempus nēmō aut
10 miles aut eques ā Caesare ad Pompēium trāsierat, cum⁸ paene cotīdiē ā Pompēiō ad Caesarem perfugerent, vulgō⁹ vērō ūniversī in Ēpirō atque Aetoliā cōscriptī militēs eārumque regiōnum omnium, quae ā Caesare tenēbantur. Sed hī¹⁰ cōgnitis omnibus rēbus, seu¹¹
15 quid¹² in mūnitiōnibus perfectum nōn erat, seu quid ā peritiōribus rei¹³ militāris dēsiderārī¹⁴ vidēbātur, temporibusque¹⁵ rērum¹⁶ et spatiis¹⁵ locōrum et custōdiārum¹⁷

particeps, participis, m., *accomplice.*

comitātus, -ūs, m., *escort, train, retinue.*

1. *repay.*

2. *bought up.*

3. Object of dūxit in circumdūxit and of ostentāvit.

4. *honorable.*

5. quodque . . . acciderat : *and because it had happened as (something) new and unusual.*

6. Acc. with circum and also as secondary object of ostentāvit.

7. *showed.*

8. *Concessive.*

9. (et) vulgō in Ēpirō . . . cōscriptī militēs . . . omnium :

(and) *in fact the soldiers enrolled in Epirus and in Aetolia and (those) of all those districts . . . (had deserted) in a body.*

10. *i.e. the brothers.*

11. seu . . . seu : *whether . . . or.*

12. *Indef. pronoun.*

13. *Objective genitive.*

14. *be lacking.*

15. *Sc. animadversis.*

16. *for various matters (connected with the blockade).*

17. *guards.*

variā diligentīā animadversā, prout¹ cuiusque eōrum, quī negōtiis praeerant, aut nātūra aut studium ferēbat, haec² ad Pompēium omnia dētulērunt.

Pompey plans an attack on Caesar.

62. Quibus ille cōgnitis ēruptiōnisque iam ante captō
5 cōnsiliō, ut dēmōnstrātum est, tegimenta galeīs³ militēs
ex vīminibus⁴ facere atque aggerem⁵ iubet comportāre.
His parātis rēbus magnum numerum levis armātūrae et
sagittāriōrum aggeremque omnem noctū in scaphās⁶
et nāvēs actuāriās⁷ impōnit et dē mediā nocte cohortēs
10 LX ex maximīs castrīs praesidiisque dēductās ad eam
partem mūnitiōnum dūcit, quae pertinēbant ad mare
longissimēque ā maximīs castrīs Caesaris aberant.
Eōdem nāvēs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus aggere et levis
armātūrae militibus complētās, quāsque ad Dyrrhachium
15 nāvēs⁸ longās habēbat, mittit et, quid ā quōque fieri
velit, praecipit.⁹ Ad eās mūnitiōnēs Caesar Lentulum
Mārcellinum quaestōrem cum legiōne nōnā positum
habēbat. Huic, quod valētūdine¹⁰ minus commodā
ūtēbatur, Fulvium Postumum adiūtōrem¹¹ summiserat.

Description of the point of attack. Caesar's men are driven back.

20 63. Erat eō locō fossa pedum xv et vāllum contrā
hostem in altitudinem pedum x, tantundemque¹² eius

prout, according, as.

1. prout . . . ferēbat: *ac-
cording as the character and
zeal of each man showed (itself).*
The clause explains variā.

2. Explained by the preced-
ing clauses, cōgnitis . . . ferē-
bat.

3. *helmets.*

4. *twigs.*

5. *rubbish.*

6. *skiffs.*

7. *swift.*

8. *nāvēs longās: warships.*

9. *ordered.*

10. *valētūdine minus com-
modā: ill health.*

11. *adjutant.*

12. *just as far as.*

vālli agger¹ in lātitudinem patēbat: ab eō intermissō
 spatiō pedum DC alter conversus in contrāriam partem
 erat vāllus² humiliōre paulō mūnitiōne. Hoc³ enim
 superiōribus diēbus timēns Caesar, nē nāvibus nostrī
 5 circumvenīrentur, duplicem eō locō fēcerat vāllum, ut,



Caesar's Siege of Pompey near Dyrrhachium

sī ancipitī proeliō dīmīcārētur, posset resistī. Sed
 operum magnitūdō et continēns⁴ omnium diērum labor,
 quod mīlia passuum in circuitū xvii erat complexus, per-
 ficiendī spatium nōn dabat. Itaque contrā mare trāns-
 10 versum⁵ vāllum, quī hās duās mūnitiōnēs coniungeret,
 nōndum perfēcerat. Quae rēs nōta erat Pompēiō dēlāta
 per Allobrogas perfugās, magnumque nostrīs attulerat

1. *embankment.*

2. *rampart.*

3. Explained by nē . . . cir-

cumvenīrentur.

4. *continuous.*

5. *at right angles.*

incommodum.¹ Nam ut ad mare II cohortēs nōnae
legiōnis excubuerant,² accessēre³ subitō primā lūce
Pompēiānī; simul nāvibus circumvectī⁴ militēs in ex-
teriōrem vāllum tēla iaciēbant, fossaeque aggere com-
5 plēbantur, et legiōnāriī interiōris mūnitiōnis dēfēnsōrēs
scālis⁵ admōtis tormentis⁶ cuiusque generis tēlisque ter-
rēbant, magnaue multitudō sagittāriōrum ab utrāque
parte circumfundēbātur.⁷ Multum⁸ autem ab ictū⁹
lapidum, quod ūnum nostrīs erat tēlum, vīminea tegi-
10 menta galeis imposita dēfendēbant. Itaque cum omni-
bus rēbus nostrī premerentur atque aegrē resisterent,
animadversum est vitium¹⁰ mūnitiōnis, quod suprā
dēmōnstrātum est, atque inter duōs vāllōs, quā per-
fectum opus nōn erat, per mare nāvibus expositī in¹¹
15 āversōs nostrōs impetum fēcērunt atque ex utrāque
mūnitiōne dēiectōs terga vertere coēgērunt.

A panic ensues. The eagle is saved by the bravery of the standard bearer.

64. Hōc tumultū nūntiātō Mārcellīnus cohortēs sub-
sidiō nostrīs labōrantibus summittit ex castrīs; quae
fugientēs¹² cōspicātae neque illōs suō adventū cōn-
20 firmāre potuērunt neque ipsae hostium impetum tulē-
runt. Itaque quodcumque¹³ addēbātur subsidiō, id
correptum¹⁴ timōre fugientium terrōrem et perīculum
augēbat; hominum enim multitudīne receptus¹⁵ impediē-

1. *injury.*

2. *had bivouacked.*

3. Perfect third pers. plur.

4. *brought around.*

5. *ladders*, abl. abs. with *ad-*
mōtis.

6. *missiles*, abl. of means.

7. *crowded around.*

8. *to a great extent.*

9. *blow.*

10. *weakness.*

11. *in . . . nostrōs: upon our*
rear.

12. Accusative.

13. *quodcumque subsidiō:*
whatever in the way of help.

14. *carried away.*

15. *retreat.*

bātur. In eō proeliō cum gravī vulnere esset affectus¹ aquilifer et ā viribus² dēficerētur,³ cōnspicātus equitēs nostrōs, 'Hanc⁴ ego,' inquit, 'et vivus multōs per annōs magnā diligentīā dēfendī et nunc moriēns eādem fidē
 5 Caesarī restituō. Nōlite, obsecrō,⁵ committere, quod ante in exercitū Caesaris nōn accidit, ut rei militāris dēdecus admittātur,⁶ incolumemque ad eum dēferet.' Hōc cāsū aquila cōservātur omnibus primae cohortis centuriōnibus interfectis praeter principem priorem.

Both Caesar and Pompey come to help.

10 65. Iamque Pompēiānī magnā⁷ caede nostrōrum castris Mārcellinī appropinquābant nōn mediocri terrōre illātō reliquīs cohortibus,⁸ et M. Antōnius, quī proximum locum praesidiōrum tenēbat, eā rē nūntiātā cum cohortibus XII dēscendēns ex locō superiōre cernēbatur.
 15 Cuius adventus Pompēiānōs compressit nostrōsque firmāvit, ut sē⁹ ex maximō timōre colligerent. Neque multō post Caesar significātiōne per¹⁰ castella fūmō factā, ut erat superiōris temporis cōsuētūdō, dēductis quibusdam cohortibus ex praesidiis eodem vēnit. Quī
 20 cōgnitō dētrīmentō cum animadvertisset Pompēium extrā mūnitiōnēs ēgressum secundum¹¹ mare, ut¹² liberē pābulārī posset nec¹³ minus aditum nāvibus habēret,

dēdecus, dēdecoris, n., *disgrace.*

comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *check.*

1. *afflicted.*

2. Personified and hence abl. of agent.

3. *was abandoned.*

4. *Sc. aquilam.*

5. *implore.*

6. *be committed.*

7. *magnā caede: abl. of at-*

tendant circumstance.

8. *Dat. with illātō.*

9. *sē colligerent: recovered.*

10. *per castella: from one doubt to another.*

11. *Prep., along.*

12. *ut . . . habēret: result.*

13. *nec minus: and yet.*

commūtātā ratiōne bellī, quoniam prōpositum¹ nōn tenuerat, castra iūxtā Pompēium mūnīre² iussit.

Pompey sends a legion to seize an abandoned camp.

66. Quā perfectā mūnitiōne animadversum est ā speculātōribus Caesaris cohortēs quāsdam, quod³ instar⁴ legiōnis vidērētur, esse post silvam et in vetera castra dūcī. Castrōrum hīc situs⁵ erat. Superiōribus diēbus nōna Caesaris legiō cum sē obiēcisset Pompēianīs cōpiīs atque opere, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, circummūnīret,⁶ castra eō locō posuit. Haec silvam quandam contingēbant neque longius ā marī passibus ccc aberant. Post mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs Caesar paulō ultrā eum locum castra trānstulit, paucisque intermissis diēbus eadem⁷ Pompēius occupāverat et, quod eō locō plūrēs erat legiōnēs habitūrus, relictō⁸ interiōre vāllō maiōrem adiēcera mūnitiōnem. Ita minōra castra inclūsa maiōribus⁹ castellī atque arcis locum obtinēbant. Item ab angulō castrōrum sinistrō mūnitiōnem ad flūmen perdūxerat, circiter passūs cccc, quō liberius ac sine periculō milītēs aquārentur. Sed is quoque mūtātō cōnsiliō quibusdam dē causīs, quās commemorārī necesse nōn est, eō locō excesserat. Ita¹⁰ complūrēs diēs inānia mānserant castra; mūnitiōnēs quidem omnēs integrae erant.

prōpositum, -ī, n., *plan.*

mūtō, I, *change.*

inclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *in-*

close.

aquor, I, *get water.*

inānis, -e, *empty.*

1. prōpositum nōn tenuerat:
had not carried out his plan (of blockade).

2. Sc. suōs as subject.

3. Attracted from gender and number of cohortēs to gender and number of instar.

4. *the equal of.*

5. *location.*

6. Sc. eās, referring to cōpiās.

7. Sc. castra.

8. *left standing.*

9. Sc. castris.

10. *in this condition.*

The camp is reached but is attacked by Caesar.

67. Eō¹ signō legiōnis illātō speculātōrēs Caesarī re-
nūntiārunt.² Hoc idem vīsum ex superiōribus quibus-
dam castellis cōfirmāvērunt. Is locus aberat ā novīs
Pompēī castris circiter passūs D. Hanc legiōnem
5 spērāns Caesar sē opprimere posse et cupiēns eius diēi
dētrīmentum sarcīre, relīquit in opere cohortēs duās,
quae speciem mūnitiōnis praeberent; ipse diversō iti-
nere quam potuit occultissimē reliquās cohortēs, numerō
xxxiii, in quibus erat legiō nōna multis āmissis cen-
10 turiōnibus dēminūtōque militum numerō, ad legiōnem
Pompēī castraque minōra duplici aciē ēdūxit. Neque
eum prīma opīniō fefellit.³ Nam et pervēnit prius,
quam Pompēius sentīre posset, et tametsī erant mūni-
tīōnēs castrōrum magnae, tamen sinistrō cornū, ubi erat
15 ipse, celeriter aggressus Pompēiānōs ex vāllō dēturbā-
vit. Erat obiectus portis ēricius. Hīc paulisper est
pugnātum, cum irrumpere⁴ nostrī cōnārentur, illī castra
dēfenderent, fortissimē T. Pūliōne, cuius operā prōdi-
tum⁵ exercitum C. Antōnī dēmōnstrāvimus, ē locō prō-
20 pugnante. Sed tamen nostrī virtūte vicērunt excisōque
ēriciō primō in maiōra castra, post etiam in castellum,
quod erat inclūsum maiōribus castris, irrūpērunt et,
quod eō⁶ pulsa legiō sēsē recēperat, nōnnūllōs ibi
repugnantēs⁷ interfēcērunt.

sarciō, -īre, sarsī, sartum, *re-
pair.*

ēricius, -ī, m., *log set with spikes.*

excīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut
down.*

1. Adverb.

2. Sc. rem, referring to signō

... illātō.

3. *did disappoint.*

4. *rush in.*

5. *betrayed.*

6. Adv., modifies recēperat.

7. Accusative.

Caesar's men mistake an outlying wall for the camp.

68. Sed fortūna, quae plūrimum potest cum in reli-
quīs rēbus tum praecipuē in bellō, parvis mōmentis¹
magnās rērum commūtatiōnēs efficit; ut tum accidit.
Mūnitiōnem, quam pertinēre ā castris ad flūmen suprā
5 dēmōnstrāvimus, dextrī Caesaris cornūs cohortēs ignō-
rantiā locī sunt secūtae, cum portam quaererent castrō-
rumque eam mūnitiōnem esse arbitrārentur. Quod²
cum esset animadversum, coniūctam esse flūminī, prō-
rutis³ mūnitiōnibus dēfendente nūllō trāscendērunt,
10 omnisque noster equitātus eās cohortēs est secūsus.

Pompey comes up with help and Caesar's men are panic-stricken.

69. Interim Pompēius hāc satis longā interiectā morā
et rē nūntiātā v legiōnēs ab opere dēductās subsidiō
suīs dūxit, eōdemque tempore equitātus eius nostris
equitibus appropinquābat, et aciēs instrūcta ā nostris,
15 quī castra occupāverant, cernēbātur, omniaque sunt
subitō mūtata. Legiō Pompēiāna celeris spē subsidii
cōfirmāta ab decumānā portā resistere cōnābātur atque
ultrō in nostrōs impetum faciēbat. Equitātus Caesaris,
quod angustō⁴ itinere per⁵ aggerēs ascendēbat, re-
20 ceptuī⁶ suō timēns initium fugae faciēbat. Dextrum
cornū, quod erat ā sinistrō sēclūsum, terrōre equitum
animadversō, nē⁷ intrā mūnitiōnem opprimerētur, eā⁸

ignōrantia, -ae, f., *ignorance*.

sēclūdō, -ere, -clūdī, -clūsum, *shut
off, separate*.

1. *incidents*.

2. Explained by *coniūctam*
... *flūminī*, which has *mūnī-
tiōnem* (understood) as subject.

3. *torn down*.

4. *angustō itinere*: *i.e.* the
breach.

5. *over*.

6. *receptuī suō timēns*: *fear-
ing for their retreat*.

7. *nē ... opprimerētur*: *pur-
pose of sēsē recipiēbat*.

8. *eā parte*: *i.e.* by the
breach.

parte, quam prōruerat, sēsē recipiēbat, ac plērīque ex hīs, nē in angustias inciderent, ex x pedum mūnitiōne sē in fossās praecipitābant, primisque oppressis¹ reliquī per hōrum corpora salūtem sibi atque exitum pariēbant.²
 5 Sinistrō cornū militēs, cum ex³ vāllō Pompēium adesse et suōs fugere cernerent, veritī, nē angustias interclūderentur, cum extrā et intus hostem habērent, eōdem,⁴ quō vēnerant, receptū sibi cōsulēbant, omniaque erant tumultūs, timōris, fugae plēna, adeō⁵ ut, cum Caesar
 10 sīgna fugientium manū prēnderet et cōsistere iubēret, aliī eōdem⁶ cursū fugerent, aliī ex metū etiam sīgna dīmitterent, neque quisquam omnīnō cōsisteret.

The same outlying wall proves the salvation of Caesar's men.

70. Hīs tantis malis haec⁷ subsidia succurrēbant,⁸ quō⁹ minus omnis dēlērētur exercitus, quod Pompēius
 15 insidiās timēns, crēdō, quod haec praeter spem acciderant eius, quī paulō ante ex castris fugientēs suōs cōnspēxerat, mūnitiōnibus appropinquāre aliquamdiū¹⁰ nōn audēbat, equitēsque eius angustias atque¹¹ hīs ab Caesaris militibus occupātis ad¹² insequendum tardābantur.¹³

praecipitō, I, throw headlong.

1. *trampled to death.*

2. *won.*

3. *ex vāllō*: modifies *cernerent*.

4. *eōdem receptū sibi cōnsulēbant*: they looked out for themselves by retreating over the same path by which they had come.

5. *so much so.*

6. *eōdem cursū*: with the same speed.

7. Explained by the *quod* clause.

8. *aided.*

9. *quō*, etc.: in preventing the whole army from being destroyed.

10. *for some time.*

11. *atque hīs occupātis*: and by the fact that these were seized.

12. *ad insequendum*: in (regard to) their pursuit.

13. *were checked.*

Ita parvae rēs magnum in utramque partem mōmentum¹ habuērunt. Mūnitiōnēs enim ā castris ad flūmen perductae expugnātis iam castris Pompēi propriam² expeditamque Caesaris victōriam interpellāvērunt,³
5 eadem rēs celeritāte insequentium tardātā nostris salūtem attulit.

Caesar's losses. Pompey saluted as Imperator. Cruelty of Labienus.

71. Duōbus hīs ūnius diēi proeliis Caesar dēsiderāvit⁴ militēs DCCCCLX et nōtōs equitēs Rōmānōs Fleginātem Tūticānum Gallum, senātōris filium, C. Fleginātem Placentiā,⁵ A. Grānium Puteolis, M. Sacrātivirum Capuā, tribūnōs militum, et centuriōnēs xxxii; sed hōrum omnium pars magna in fossis mūnitiōnibusque et flūminis rīpīs oppressa suōrum in terrōre ac fugā sine ūllō vulnere interiit: signaque sunt militāria āmissa xxxii.
15 Pompēius eō proeliō imperātor est appellātus. Hoc nōmen obtinuit atque ita sē posteā salūtārī passus est; sed in litteris numquam scribere est⁶ solitus, neque in fascibus insīgnia⁷ laureae praetulit. At Labiēnus, cum ab eō impetrāvisset, ut sibi captivōs trādī iubēret,
20 omnēs⁸ prōductōs⁹ ostentātiōnis, ut vidēbātur, causā,

salūtō, 1, greet, hail.

fascis, fascis, m., in plu. fasces, a bundle of rods inclosing an ax, a symbol of authority.

laurea, -ae, f., the laurel tree, laurel wreath.

ostentātiō, ostentātiōnis, f., display.

1. influence.

2. propriam expeditamque: complete and easy.

3. prevented.

4. lost.

5. from Placentia.

6. est solitus: was accustomed.

7. insīgnia praetulit: had the decoration of laurel wreath carried before him.

8. Obj. of appellāns, interrogāns, and interfēcit.

9. prōductōs causā: after they had been led out for the sake.

quō¹ maior perfugae fidēs habērētur, commilitōnēs² appellāns et magnā³ verbōrum contumēliā interrogāns, solērentne veterānī mīlītēs fugere, in omnium cōspectū interfēcit.

Pompey's men are prematurely elated.

5 72. His rēbus tantum fidūciae⁴ ac spīritūs⁵ Pompēiānis accessit, ut nōn dē ratiōne bellī cōgitārent, sed vīcisse iam vidērentur. Nōn⁶ illī paucitātem⁷ nostrōrum mīlitum, nōn inīquitātem locī atque angustias praeoccupātis⁸ castris et ancipitem terrōrem intrā extrāque
10 mūnitiōnēs, nōn abscisum⁹ in duās partēs exercitum, cum altera alterī auxilium ferre nōn posset, causae¹⁰ fuisse cōgitābant. Nōn ad haec addēbant, nōn concursū acri factō, nōn proeliō dimicatū,¹¹ sibique¹² ipsōs¹² multitūdine atque angustis maius attulisse dē-
15 trimentum, quam ab hoste accēpissent, nōn dēnique commūnēs bellī cāsūs¹³ recordābantur,¹⁴ quam parvulae¹⁵ saepe causae vel falsae¹⁶ suspīciōnis vel terrōris repentinī vel obiectae¹⁷ religiōnis magna dētrimenta intulissent, quotiēns vel ducis vitiō¹⁸ vel culpā¹⁹ tribūnī in exercitū
commilitō, commilitōnis, m., *fel-* interrogō, I, *ask.*
low soldier.

1. quō . . . habērētur: *that greater confidence might be placed in him though a deserter.*

2. Appositive with omnēs.

3. magnā . . . contumēliā: *with most insulting words.*

4. confidence.

5. pride.

6. Emphatic.

7. paucitātem, etc.: subjects of fuisse.

8. praeoccupātis castris: *due to the fact that the enemy had previously occupied the camp.*

9. cut.

10. causae fuisse: *had been the cause (of our flight).*

11. Sc. esse: impersonal.

12. Refer to Caesar's men.

13. Explained by the indir. questions following.

14. *did recollect.*

15. *slight.*

16. *groundless.*

17. obiectae religiōnis: *of opposing religious scruples.*

18. *mistake.*

19. *fault.*

esset¹ offēsum; sed proinde² ac sī virtūte vicissent neque ūlla commūtātiō rērum posset accidere, per orbem³ terrārum fāmā ac litteris victōriam eius diēi celebrābant.

Caesar encourages his troops.

5 73. Caesar ā superiōribus cōnsiliis dēpulsus omnem sibi commūtandam bellī ratiōnem existimāvit. Itaque ūnō tempore praesidiis omnibus dēductis et oppugnātiōne dimissā coāctōque in ūnum locum exercitū cōntiōnem⁴ apud militēs habuit hortātusque est, nē ea, quae
10 accidissent, graviter ferrent, nēve hīs rēbus terrerentur multisque secundis proeliis ūnum adversum et⁵ id mediocre oppōnerent.⁶ Habendam fortūnae grātiā, quod Ītaliā sine aliquō vulnere cēpissent, quod duās Hispāniās bellicōssimōrum hominum perītissimis atque
15 exercitātissimis ducibus pācāvissent, quod finitimās frumentāriāsque prōvinciās in potestātem redēgissent; dēnique recordārī dēbere, quā fēlicitāte inter mediās hostium classēs opplētis nōn solum portibus sed etiam litoribus omnēs incolumēs essent trānsportātī. Si nōn
20 omnia caderent secunda, fortūnam esse industriā sublevandam.⁷ Quod⁸ esset acceptum dētrimentī, cuiusvis⁹ potius quam suae culpaē dēbere tribuī. Locum sē aequum ad dimicandum dedisse, potitum esse hostium

concelebrō, 1, *proclaim.*

oppleō, -ēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *fill.*

industria, -ae, f., *diligence, activity, zeal.*

1. esset offēsum: *harm had been done.*

2. proinde ac sī: *just as if.*

3. orbem terrārum: *the world.*

4. *speech.*

5. et id mediocre: *and that a slight one.*

6. *set . . . over against.*

7. *help.*

8. quod . . . dētrimentī: *subject of dēbere tribuī.*

9. Possessive gen., modifying culpaē, which is indir. obj. of tribuī.

castris, expulisse ac superasse pignantēs.¹ Sed sive ipsorum perturbātiō sive error aliquis sive etiam fortuna partam² iam praesentemque victōriam interpellāvisset, dandam omnibus operam, ut acceptum incommodum
 5 virtūte sarcirētur;³ quod si esset factum, futurum ut detrīmentum in bonum verteret, uti⁴ ad Gergoviam accidisset, atque ei, qui ante dīmicāre timuissent, ultrō sē proeliō offerrent.

They become zealous.

74. Hāc habitā cōtiōne nōnnūllos signiferōs ignō-
 10 miniā⁵ notāvit ac locō mōvit. Exercitui quidem omnī tantus incessit ex incommodō dolor tantumque studium infāmia⁶ sarcindae, ut nēmō aut tribūnī aut centuriō-
 nis imperium dēsiderāret,⁷ et sibi quisque etiam poenae locō graviōrēs impōneret labōrēs simulque omnēs ardē-
 15 rent⁸ cupiditāte⁹ pugnandī. Cum superiōris etiam ordi-
 nis nōnnūllī ōrātiōne permōtī manendum eō locō et rem proeliō committendam exīstimārent, contrā¹⁰ ea Caesar neque satis militibus perterritis cōfidēbat spatiumque
 20 relictis¹¹ mūnitiōnibus magnopere rei frūmentāriae timē-
 bat.

perturbātiō, perturbātiōnis, f. ; cf.

perturbō.

error, errōris, m., *mistake*.

notō, 1, *designate with a mark, brand, censure*.

recreō, 1 ; cf. creō.

1. Object.

2. partam . . . praesentem-
 que: *already won and in their grasp*.

3. *repair*.

4. *as*.

5. *disgrace*.

6. *dishonor*.

7. *waited for*.

8. *burned*.

9. *eager desire*.

10. contrā ea: *on the other hand*.

11. *inasmuch as he had left*.

Caesar withdraws from the siege with Pompey following close behind.

75. Itaque nūllā interpositā morā, sauciōrum modo¹ et aegrōrum habitā ratiōne, impedimenta omnia silentiō primā nocte ex castris Apollōniam praemisit. Haec² conquiēscere ante iter cōfectum vetuit.³ Hīs ūna legiō
5 missa praesidiō est. Hīs explicitis rēbus duās in castris legiōnēs retinuit, reliquās dē quārtā vigiliā complūribus portis ēductās eōdem itinere praemisit parvōque spatiō intermissō, ut et militāre institūtum servārētur et quam sērissimē⁴ eius profectiō cōgnōscerētur, conclāmārī⁵
10 iussit statimque ēgressus et novissimum agmen cōsecūtus celeriter ex cōspectū castrōrum discessit. Neque vērō Pompēius cōgnitō cōnsiliō eius moram ūllam ad insequendum intulit, sed id⁶ spectāns,⁷ sī itinere impeditōs perterritōs dēprehendere⁸ posset, exercitum ē castris
15 ēdūxit equitātumque praemisit ad novissimum agmen dēmorandum,⁹ neque cōsequī potuit, quod multum expeditō itinere antecesserat Caesar.

Pompey finally changes his plan.

77. Posterō diē Caesar similiter praemissis primā nocte impedimentis dē quārtā vigiliā ipse ēgreditur, ut,
20 sī qua esset imposita dīmīcandī necessitās, subitum cāsū expeditō exercitū subiret.¹⁰ Hoc idem reliquīs

conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
rest.

explicō, -āre, -āvī (-uī), -ātum
(-itum), *arrange.*
similiter, in like manner.

1. modo habitā ratiōne: *simply making provision for.*

2. i.e. the baggage train.

3. forbade.

4. latest.

5. the signal to be given.

6. Explained by sī . . . posset.

7. having in view.

8. catch.

9. delay.

10. meet.

fēcit diēbus. Quibus rēbus perfectum est, ut altissimīs¹ flūminibus atque impeditissimīs itineribus nūllum acciperet incommodum. Pompēius primī diēi morā² illātā et reliquōrum diērum frūstrā labōre susceptō cum³ sē
 5 magnīs itineribus extenderet et praegressōs cōsequi cuperet, quārto diē finem sequendī fēcit atque aliud sibi cōsiliū capiendum exīstimāvit.

Caesar goes to Apollonia. Pompey makes for the same goal.

78. Caesarī ad sauciōs dēpōnendōs, stipendium exercitui dandum, sociōs cōfirmandōs, praesidium urbibus
 10 relinquendum necesse erat adire Apollōniam. Pompēius quoque dē Caesaris cōsiliō coniectūrā iūdicāns ad Scīpiōnem properandum sibi exīstimābat: sī Caesar iter illō⁴ habēret, ut subsidium Scīpiōnī ferret; sī ab ōrā maritimā Ōricōque discēdere nōllet, quod legiōnēs
 15 equitātumque ex Ītaliā exspectāret, ipse ut omnibus cōpiīs Domitium aggrederētur.

Domitius barely escapes from Pompey and joins Caesar.

79. His dē causīs uterque eōrum celeritātī studēbat, et suis ut esset auxiliō, et ad opprimendōs adversāriōs
 nē occāsiōnī⁵ temporis deesset. Sed Caesarem Apollōnia ā dirēctō itinere āverterat; Pompēius per Candāviam
 20 iter in Macedoniam expeditum habēbat. Accessit⁶ etiam ex imprōvisō aliud incommodum, quod⁷ Domitius, quī diēs

extendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum
 (-tēsum), *stretch*; with sē, *extends one's self*.

praegredior; cf. ēgredior.
 coniectūra, -ae, f., *inference*.
 adversārius, -ī, m., *enemy*.

1. altissimīs, etc.: abl. abs. denoting concession.

2. morā illātā, labōre susceptō: abl. abs. denoting cause.

3. Concessive.

4. Adverb.

5. occāsiōnī temporis: *favorable chance*.

6. *was added*.

7. *namely that*.

complūrēs castrīs Scīpiōnis castra collāta ¹ habuisset, reī frūmentāriae causā ab eō discesserat et Hērāclīam, quae est subiecta ² Candāviae, iter fēcerat, ut ipsa fortūna illum ³ obicere Pompēiō vidērētur. Haec ad id tempus
 5 Caesar ignōrābat. Simul ā Pompēiō litterīs per omnēs prōvinciās civitātēque dīmissīs dē proeliō ad Dyrrhachium factō lātius inflātiusque multō, quam ⁴ rēs erat gesta, fāma percrēbuerat pulsum ⁵ fugere Caesarem paene omnibus cōpiīs āmissīs. Haec ⁶ itinera infesta
 10 reddiderat, haec civitātēs nōnnūllās ab eius amicitia āvertēbat. Quibus accidit rēbus, ut plūribus dīmissī ⁷ itineribus ā Caesare ad Domitium et ā Domitiō ad Caesarem nūllā ratiōne iter cōficere possent. Sed Allobrogēs, ⁸ Raucilli atque Egī familiārēs, quōs perfūgisce ad
 15 Pompēium dēmōstrāvimus, ⁹ cōspicātī in itinere explōrātōrēs Domiti, seu pristinā ¹⁰ suā cōsuētūdine, quod ūnā in Galliā bella gesserant, seu glōriā ¹¹ ēlāti cūncta, ut erant ācta, exposuērunt et Caesaris profectiōnem, adventum Pompēi docuērunt. Ā quibus Domitius certior factus
 20 vix iv hōrārū spatiō antecēdēs ¹² hostium beneficiō periculum vitāvit et ad Aeginium, quod est adiectum ¹³ appositumque Thessaliae, Caesarī venienti occurrit.

inflātius, with more exaggeration.

percrēbrēsco, -ere, -crēbruī (-crēbuī),—, be spread abroad. infestus, -a, -um, dangerous.

1. brought together, i.e. near to.

2. brought close, i.e. next to.

3. illum obicere: to put him in the way of.

4. quam . . . gesta: than the facts warranted.

5. pulsum . . . āmissīs: indir. disc. depending on fāma.

6. = fāma.

7. Sc. nūntiī.

8. certain Allobroges.

9. See p. 129, l. 2.

10. pristinā suā cōsuētūdine: because of their former intimacy.

11. glōriā ēlāti: puffed up by the glory (they had won).

12. getting the start.

13. adiectum appositumque: near and bordering upon.

Caesar storms Gomphi.

80. Coniūctō exercitū Caesar Gomphōs pervēnit, quod est oppidum primum Thessaliae venientibus¹ ab Ēpirō; quae gēns paucis ante mēnsibus ultrō ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserat, ut suis omnibus facultātibus
 5 ūterētur, praesidiumque ab eō militum petierat. Sed eō fāma iam praecurrerat,² quam suprā docuimus, dē proeliō Dyrrhachinō, quod³ multis auxerat partibus. Itaque Androsthēnēs, praetor Thessaliae, cum sē victōriae Pompēi comitem esse māllet quam socium Caesaris in rēbus adversis, omnem ex agris multitudinem servōrum ac liberōrum in oppidum cōgit portāsque praeclūdīt et ad Scīpiōnem Pompēiumque nūntiōs mittit, ut sibi subsidiō veniant: sē cōfidere mūnitiōnibus oppidī, sī celeriter succurrātur;⁴ longinquam oppugnātiōnem
 15 sustinēre nōn posse. Scīpiō discessū exercituum ab Dyrrhachiō cōgnitō Lārīsam legiōnēs addūxerat; Pompēius nōndum Thessaliae appropinquābat. Caesar castrīs mūnītīs scālās⁵ mūsculōsque⁶ ad repentinam oppugnātiōnem fierī et crātēs⁷ parārī iussit. Quibus
 20 rēbus effectīs cohortātus milītēs docuit, quantum⁸ ūsum habēret ad sublevandam omnium rērum inopiam potirī⁹

comes, comitis, m. and f., *companion, associate, partaker, sharer.*

mālō, mälle, mālui, *prefer.*
 praeclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *shut.*

1. *as you come.*

2. Cf. currō.

3. quod . . . partibus: *which it (fāma) had increased many times.*

4. *some one would hurry to help.*

5. *ladders.*

6. *sheds.*

7. *wicker hurdles.*

8. quantum habēret, etc.: *how great a help toward relieving, etc., it would bring to gain possession of.*

9. potirī, inferre, fieri: *subjects of habēret.*

oppidō plēnō atque opulentō, simul reliquīs cīvitātibus huius urbis exemplō¹ inferre terrōrem et id fieri celeriter, priusquam auxilia concurrerent. Itaque ūsus singulārī militum studiō eōdem, quō vēnerat, diē post
 5 hōram nōnam oppidum altissimīs² moenibus oppugnāre aggressus ante sōlis occāsum expugnāvit et ad diripiendum³ militibus concessit statimque ab oppidō castra mōvit et Mētopolim vēnit, sic ut nūntiōs expugnātī⁴ oppidī fāmamque antecēderet.

The other surrounding states surrender.

10 81. Mētopolitae primum⁵ eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō isdem permōtī rūmōribus portās clausērunt mūrōsque armātīs complēvērunt; sed posteā cāsū cīvitātis Gomphēnsis cōgnitō ex captivīs, quōs Caesar ad mūrū prōdūcendōs cūrāverat, portās aperuērunt. Quibus diligentissimē
 15 cōservātīs collātā⁶ fortūnā Mētopolitū⁷ cum cāsū Gomphēnsium nūlla Thessaliae fuit cīvitās praeter Lārisaeōs, quī magnīs exercitibus Scipionis tenēbantur, quī⁸ Caesarī pārēret atque imperāta faceret. Ille⁹ idōneum locum in agrīs nactus plēnis frūmentōrum,¹⁰ quae prope
 20 iam mātūra erant, ibi adventum exspectāre Pompēi eoque¹¹ omnem bellī¹² ratiōnem cōferre cōstituit.

opulentus, -a, -um; cf. Eng. *opulent*.

1. *warning example.*
2. altissimīs moenibus: abl. of description with oppidum.
3. *plundering.*
4. expugnātī oppidī: *of the storming of the town.*
5. Here = *at first.*
6. collātā cum: *compared with.*

7. = Mētopolitārum.
8. quī pārēret: *but that obeyed.*
9. *i.e.* Caesar.
10. Note the plural.
11. eō cōferre: *transfer to that place.*
12. bellī ratiōnem: *issue of the campaign.*

Pompey and Scipio join forces. The Pompeians quarrel over the booty as though the victory were already won.

82. Pompēius paucis post diebus in Thessaliam per-
venit cōtiōnātusque ¹ apud cūctum exercitum suis agit
grātiās, Scipiōnis milites cohortatur, ut partā ² iam
victoriā praedae ac praemiōrum velint esse participēs, ³
5 receptisque omnibus in ūna castra legiōnibus suum cum
Scipiōne honorem partitur classicumque apud eum canī
et alterum ⁴ illi iubet praetorium tendi. ⁵ Auctis cōpiis
Pompēi duobusque magnis exercitibus coniūctis pristina
omnium cōfirmatur opiniō et spēs victoriae augētur,
10 adeo ut, quidquid intercēderet temporis, id morārī redi-
tum in Ītaliā vidērētur, et ⁶ si quādo quid Pompēius
tardius aut cōsīderātius faceret, ūnīus ⁷ esse negōtium
diēi, sed illum ⁸ dēlectārī imperiō et cōsulārēs praeto-
riōsque ⁹ servōrum habere numerō dicerent. ¹⁰ Iamque
15 inter sē palam dē praemiis ac sacerdotiis contendēbant
in ¹¹ annōsque cōsulātum ¹² dēfīniēbant, ¹³ aliī domōs
bonaque eōrum, quī in castris erant Caesaris, petēbant;
magnaue inter eōs in cōsiliō fuit contrōversia, oportē-

partior, 4, *divide.*

classicum, -ī, n., *trumpet call.*

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *sing, sound.*

praetorium, -ī, n., *general's tent.*

cōsīderātē, *deliberately.*

dēlectō, 1, *delight.*

cōsulāris, cōsulāris, m., *ex-con- sul.*

sacerdotium, -ī, n., *priesthood.*

1. *after making an address.*

2. *gained.*

3. *sharers.*

4. *a second.*

5. *pitch.*

6. Connects vidērētur and dicerent.

7. ūnīus . . . diēi: *was a task of but a single day; depends on dicerent.*

8. illum dēlectārī imperiō: *he was too much pleased with his command.*

9. *ex-praetors.*

10. *they said (in criticism).*

11. in annōsque: *and for years ahead.*

12. *consulship.*

13. *established.*

retne Lūcili¹ Hirrī, quod² is ā Pompēiō ad Parthōs missus esset, proximīs comitiīs³ praetōriīs absentis ratiōnem habērī, cum eius necessariī fidem implōrārent Pompēi, praestāret, quod proficīscenti recēpisset, nē per
 5 eius auctōritātem dēceptus vidērētur, reliquī, in labōre parī ac periculō nē ūnus omnēs antecēderet, recūsārent.

Pompey finally offers battle.

85. Pompēius, quī castra in colle habēbat, ad infimās rādīcēs montis aciem instruēbat,⁴ semper, ut vidēbātur, exspectāns⁵ sī inīquīs locīs Caesar sē subiceret. Caesar
 10 nullā ratiōne ad pugnam ēlicī⁶ posse Pompēium existi- māns, hanc sibi commodissimam bellī ratiōnem⁷ iūdicā- vit, utī castra ex eō locō movēret, semperque esset in itineribus, haec⁸ spectāns, ut movendis castrīs plūribus adeundīs locīs commodiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur,
 15 simulque in itinere ut aliquam occāsiōnem dimicandī nancīscerētur et īnsolitum ad labōrem Pompēi exercitum cotidiānis itineribus dēfatīgāret.⁹ Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, sīgnō iam profectiōnis datō tabernāculisque¹⁰ dētēnsīs animadversum est paulō¹¹ ante extrā¹² cotidiānam cōn-
 20 suētūdinem longius ā vāllō esse aciem Pompēi prō- gressam, ut¹³ nōn inīquō locō posse dimicārī vidērētur.

īnsolitus, -a, -um, *unaccustomed, unusual.*

dētendō, -ere, —, -tēnsūm, *take down.*

1. Lūcili Hirrī: obj. gen. with ratiōnem.

2. quod . . . esset: explains absentis.

3. *elections.*

4. Imperf., denoting repeated action.

5. exspectāns sī: *waiting to see whether.*

6. *lure out.*

7. Explained by utī . . . movēret . . . esset.

8. Explained by the follow- ing subjunct. clauses.

9. *exhaust.*

10. *tents.*

11. paulō ante: adv., modi- fying esse prōgressam.

12. *contrary to.*

13. ut . . . vidērētur: *so that*

Tunc Caesar apud suōs, cum iam esset agmen in portis, 'Differendum est,' inquit, 'iter in¹ praesentia nōbīs et dē proeliō cōgitandum, sicut semper dēpoposcimus. Animō² sīmus ad dīmīcandum parātī: nōn facile oc-
 5 cāsionem posteā reperiēmus;' cōnfestimque expeditās cōpiās ēdūcit.

Pompey expects to win with his cavalry.

86. Pompēius quoque, ut posteā cōgnitum est, suōrum omnium hortātū statuerat proeliō dēcertāre. Namque etiam in cōnsiliō superiōribus diēbus dixerat, priusquam
 10 concurrerent aciēs, fore utī exercitus Caesaris pellerētur. Id cum essent plērīque admirātī, 'Sciō mē,' inquit, 'paene incrēdibilem rem pollicērī; sed ratiōnem³ cōnsiliī mei accipite, quō firmiōre ānimō in proelium prōdeātis. Persuāsī equitibus nostris (idque mihi factūrōs
 15 cōfirmāvērunt) ut, cum propius sit accessum, dextrum Caesaris cornū ab latere apertō aggredierentur et circumventā ab tergō aciē prius perturbātum exercitum pellerent, quam ā nōbīs tēlum in hostem iacerētur. Ita sine periculō legiōnum et paene sine vulnere bellum
 20 cōficiēmus. Id autem difficile nōn est, cum tantum equitātū valeāmus.' Simul dēnūntiāvit, ut essent animō parātī in⁴ posterum et, quoniam fieret dīmīcandī potestās, ut⁵ saepe cōgitāvissent, nē ūsū⁶ manūque reliquōrum⁷ opīniōnem fallerent.⁸

dēposcō, -ere, -poposci, —; cf. hortātus, -ūs, m., cf. hortor. poscō.

it seemed that a decisive battle could be fought in a place not unfavorable (to Caesar).

1. in praesentia: for the present.
2. Abl. of specification.
3. nature.

4. in posterum: for the future.

5. as.

6. ūsū manūque: as to their

practice and power.

7. i.e. those not present.

8. disappoint.

Labienus speaks slightly of Caesar's troops.

87. Hunc Labiēnus excēpit¹ et, cum² Caesaris cōpiās dēspiceret, Pompēi cōsilium summis laudibus efferret,³ 'Nōlī,' inquit, 'existimāre, Pompēi,⁴ hunc esse exercitum, quī Galliam Germāniamque dēvicerit. Om-
 5 nibus interfui⁵ proeliis neque temerē incōgnitam rem prōnūntiō. Perexigua⁶ pars illius exercitūs superest; magna pars dēperiit, quod accidere tot proeliis fuit necesse, multōs autumnī pestilentia in Italiā cōsūmpsit, multī domum discessērunt, multī sunt relictī in conti-
 10 nenti.⁷ An nōn audistis ex⁸ iis, quī per causam valētūdinis remānsērunt, cohortēs esse Brundisī factās? Hae cōpiae, quās vidētis, ex dēlēctibus hōrum annōrum in citeriōre Galliā sunt refectae, et plērique sunt ex colōniis⁹ Trāspadānis. Ac tamen quod fuit rōboris
 15 duōbus proeliis Dyrrhachīnis interiit.' Haec cum dixisset, iūrāvit sē nisi victōrem in castra nōn reversūrum reliquōsque, ut idem facerent, hortātus est. Hoc laudāns Pompēius idem iūrāvit; nec vērō ex reliquīs fuit quisquam, quī iūrāre dubitāret. Haec tum facta sunt in
 20 cōsiliō, magnāque spē et laetitiā¹⁰ omnium discessum est; ac iam animō victōriam praecipiebant,¹¹ quod dē rē

dēvincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum; cf.

vincō.

dēpereō, -īre, -perīi, —, *perish*
(from among them).

autumnus, -ī, m., *autumn.*

pestilentia, -ae, f., *plague.*

dēlēctus, -ūs, m., *draft.*

rōbor, rōboris, n., *oak, vigor, strength.*

laudō, I, *praise.*

1. followed.

2. cum . . . dēspiceret: *while he showed his contempt for.*

3. extolled.

4. Vocative.

5. took part.

6. very small.

7. continētī (terrā): *continent, i.e. Italy.*

8. ex iis: *modifies esse factās.*

9. colonies.

10. joy.

11. anticipated.

tantā et ā tam perītō imperātōre nihil frūstrā cōnfirmārī vidēbātur.

Pompey forms his battle line.

88. Caesar, cum Pompēi castris appropinquāset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instrūctam animadvertit. Erant in sinistrō cornū legiōnēs duae trāditae ā Caesare initiō dissēsiōnis ex senātūs cōsultō; quārum ūna prima, altera tertia appellābātur. In eō locō ipse erat Pompēius. Mediam aciem Scīpiō cum legiōnibus Syriacīs tenēbat. Ciliciēnsis legiō coniūcta cum cohortibus
 10 Hispānīs, quās trāductās ab Afrāniō docuimus, in dextrō cornū erant collocātae. Hās¹ firmissimās sē habēre Pompēius existimābat. Reliquās inter aciem mediam cornuaque interiēcerat numerōque cohortēs cx explēverat. Haec erant milia XLV, ēvocātōrum circiter duo,²
 15 quae ex beneficiāriīs superiōrum exercituum ad eum convēnerant; quae tōtā aciē disperserat. Reliquās cohortēs VII in castris propinquisque castellis praesidiō disposuerat. Dextrum cornū eius rīvus³ quīdam impeditis rīpis mūniēbat; quam ob causam cūctum equitātum,
 20 sagittariōs funditōrēsque omnēs in sinistrō cornū obiēcerat.

Caesar forms his battle line.

89. Caesar superius⁴ institūtum servāns decimam legiōnem in dextrō cornū, nōnam in sinistrō collocāverat, tametsī⁵ erat Dyrrhachinīs proeliis vehementer attenuāta.
 25 et huic sic adiūnxit octāvam, ut paene ūnam ex duābus

beneficiārius, -ī, m., *privileged soldier* attenuō, I, *weaken*.

1. hās . . . habēre: *these were the strongest he had.*

2. Sc. milia.

3. *stream.*

4. *former.*

5. *although.*

efficeret, atque alteram alterī praesidiō esse iusserat. Cohortēs in aciē LXXX cōstitūtās habēbat, quae summa¹ erat mīlium XXII; cohortēs II castrīs praesidiō reliquerat. Sinistrō cornū Antōnium, dextrō P. Sūllam, mediā aciē
 5 Cn. Domitium praeposuerat. Ipse contrā Pompēium cōstitit. Simul hīs rēbus animadversīs, quās dēmōnstrāvimus, timēns nē ā multitudīne equitum dextrum cornū circumvenīrētur, celeriter ex tertiā aciē singulās² cohortēs dētrāxit atque ex hīs quārtam instituit equitātui-
 10 que opposuit et, quid fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque eius diēi victōriam in eārum cohortium virtūte cōstāre. Simul tertiae aciēi totique exercitui imperāvit, nē iniussū suō concurreret: sē, cum id fierī vellet, vēxillō³ sīgnum datūrum.

Caesar addresses his army and gives signal for battle.

15 90. Exercitum cum militārī mōre ad pugnam cohortārētur suaque in eum perpetuī⁴ temporis officia praedicāret,⁵ imprimīs commemorāvit: Testibus sē militibus ūti posse, quantō studiō pācem petisset; quae per Vatīnium in colloquiis, quae per A. Clōdium cum Scīpiōne ēgisset,
 20 quibus modis ad Ōricum cum Libōne dē mittendis lēgātīs contendisset. Neque sē umquam abūtī militum sanguine neque rem pūblicam alterutrō exercitū privāre voluisse. Hāc habitā ōrātiōne exposcentibus militibus et studiō pugnae ārdentibus tubā sīgnum dedit.

imprimīs, *especially.*

abūtor, -ī, -ūsus sum, *waste.*

sanguis, sanguinis, m., *blood.*

alteruter, -tra, -trum, *either.*

privō, I, *deprive.*

exposcō; cf. poscō.

1. *total.*

2. *one from each legion.*

3. *flag.*

4. *perpetuī temporis officia: his constant services.*

5. *related.*

Crastinus leads the charge upon Pompey.

91. Erat Crāstinus ēvocātus in exercitū Caesaris, quī
superiōre annō apud eum primum pilum in legiōne x
dūxerat, vir singulārī virtūte. Hic signō datō, 'Sequi-
mini mē,' inquit, 'manipulārēs mei quī fuistis, et vestrō
5 imperātōrī quam cōstituistis¹ operam date. Unum hoc
proelium superest; quō cōfectō et ille² suam dignitā-
tem³ et nōs nostram libertātem⁴ recuperābimus.'⁵
Simul respiciēns Caesarem, 'Faciam,' inquit, 'hodiē,
imperātor, ut aut vivō mihi aut mortuō grātiās agās.'
10 Haec cum dixisset, prīmus ex dextrō cornū prōcucurrit,
atque eum ēlēctī militēs circiter cxx voluntariī eiusdem
centuriae sunt prōsecuti.

Pompey awaits the result. Caesar criticizes his tactics.

92. Inter duās aciēs tantum erat relictum spatiī, ut
satis esset ad concursum utriusque exercitūs. Sed Pom-
15 pēius suis praedixerat, ut Caesaris impetum exciperent
nēve sē locō movērent aciemque eius distrahi pateren-
tur; idque admonitū C. Triārī fēcisse dicēbātur, ut
prīmus excursus vīsque militum infringerētur aciēsque
distenderētur atque in suis ordinibus dispositi⁶ dispersōs

manipulāris, -e, *belonging to a
maniple*; as noun, *soldier of a
maniple*, here *comrade*.

hodiē; cf. hōc + diē.

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *pick*.

voluntārius, -a, -um, *volunteer*.

centuria, -ae, f., *century, company*.

praedicō; cf. dicō.

distrahō; cf. trahō.

admonitus, -ūs, m.; cf. moneō.

excursus, -ūs, m.; cf. currō.

infringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctum,
break.

distendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentum,
throw into confusion.

dispōnō; cf. pōnō.

dispergō, -ere, -spersī, -spersum,
scatter.

1. Sc. dare.

2. i.e. Caesar.

3. rank.

4. i.e. from military service.

5. recover.

6. Refers to Pompey's men.

adorirentur; leviusque cāsūra pīla spērābat in locō re-
tentis militibus, quam sī ipsī immissis tēlis occur-
rissent, simul fore,¹ ut duplicatō cursū Caesaris milites
exanimarentur et lassitudine² cōficerentur. Quod
5 nōbīs quidem nullā ratiōne factum ā Pompēiō videtur,
propterea quod³ est quaedam animī incitātiō atque
alacritās nātūrāliter innāta omnibus, quae studiō pug-
nae incenditur. Hanc nōn reprimere, sed augere im-
perātōrēs dēbent; neque frūstrā antīquitus⁴ institūtum
10 est, ut signa⁵ undique concinerent clāmōremque ūni-
versī tollerent: quibus rēbus et hostēs terrērī et suōs
incitārī existimāvērunt.

Caesar's men advance halfway, halt, and then attack.

93. Sed nostrī milites datō signō cum īnfestis⁶ pīlis
prōcucurrissent atque animadvertissent nōn⁷ concurrī ā
15 Pompēiānis, ūsū perītī ac superiōribus pugnis exercitātī
suā sponte cursum repressērunt et ad medium ferē
spatium cōstitērunt, nē cōsumptis vīribus appropinquā-
rent, parvōque intermissō temporis spatiō ac rūsus
renovātō cursū pīla mīsērunt celeriterque, ut erat prae-
20 ceptum ā Caesare, gladiōs strīnxērunt. Neque vērō
Pompēiānī huic rei dēfuērunt. Nam et tēla missa ex-
cēpērunt⁸ et impetum legiōnum tulērunt et ōrdinēs con-
servāvērunt pīlisque missis ad gladiōs rediērunt. Eōdem

leviter; cf. levis.

incitātiō, incitātiōnis, f.; cf. incitō.

nātūrāliter, *naturally*.

reprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum;

cf. opprimō.

concinō, -ere, -cinuī, —, *sound*.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strīctum,
draw.

1. Depends on spērābat.

2. *weariness*.

3. Refers to Pompey's plan
of battle.

4. *in former days*.

5. Nominative.

6. *threatening*.

7. nōn concurrī: *no attack was
being made*.

8. *i.e.* on their shields.

tempore equitēs ab sinistrō Pompēi cornū, ut erat imperātum, ūniversī prōcucurrērunt, omnisque multitudō sagittāriōrum sē profūdīt. Quōrum impetum noster equitātus nōn tulit, sed paulātīm locō mōtus cessit,
 5 equitēsque Pompēi hōc ācrius instāre et sē turmātīm explicāre aciemque nostram ā latere apertō circumīre coepērunt. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, quārtae aciēi, quam instituerat sex¹ cohortium, dedit sīgnū. Illi celeriter prōcucurrērunt infestisque sīgnīs tantā vī in
 10 Pompēi equitēs impetum fēcērunt, ut eōrum nēmō cōsisteret omnēsque conversī nōn solum locō excēderent, sed prōtinus incitātī fugā montēs altissimōs peterent. Quibus summōtis² omnēs sagittāriī funditōrēsque dēstitūtī³ inermēs sine praesidiō interfectī sunt. Eōdem im-
 15 petū cohortēs sinistrum cornū pugnantibus etiam tum ac resistentibus in aciē Pompēiānīs circumiērunt eōsque ā tergō sunt adortī.

The Pompeians are routed. Pompey shows himself a coward.

94. Eōdem tempore tertiam aciem Caesar, quae quiēta fuerat et sē ad id tempus locō tenuerat, prō-
 20 currere iussit. Ita cum recentēs atque intēgrī dēfessīs successissent, aliū autem ā tergō adorīrentur, sustinēre Pompēiānī nōn potuērunt atque ūniversī terga vertērunt. Neque vērō Caesarem fefellit,⁴ quīn ab iīs cohortibus, quae contrā equitātum in quārtā aciē collocātae essent,
 25 initium victōriae orīrētur, ut ipse in cohortandīs militibus

profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, turmātīm, by squadrons.
 pour forth; with sē, rush explicō, -āre, -āvi (-uī), -ātum
 forth. (-itum), spread out.

1. sex cohortium: made up of six cohorts, modifies quam.

2. dislodged.

3. abandoned.

4. did escape; the subject is the quīn clause.

prōnūntiāverat. Ab hīs enim primum equitātus est pulsus, ab isdem factae caedēs sagittāriōrum ac funditōrum, ab isdem aciēs Pompēiāna ā sinistrā parte circumita atque initium fugae factum. Sed Pompēius, ut
 5 equitātum suum pulsum vīdit atque eam partem, cui maximē cōnfidēbat, perterritam animadvertit, aliīs quoque diffisus aciē excessit prōtinusque sē in castra equō contulit et iis centuriōnibūs,¹ quōs in statīōne ad praetōriam² portam posuerat, clārē, ut milītēs exaudīrent,
 10 ‘Tuēminī,’³ inquit, ‘castra et dēfendite diligenter, sī quid dūrius acciderit. Ego reliquās portās circumeō⁴ et castrōrum praesidia cōfirmō.’⁴ Haec cum dixisset, sē in praetōrium⁵ contulit, summae⁶ rei diffidēs et tamen ēventum exspectāns.

Caesar captures Pompey's camp.

15 95. Caesar Pompēiānīs ex fugā intrā vāllum compulsis nūllum spātium⁷ perterritis dare oportēre exīstimāns milītēs cohortātus est, ut beneficiō fortunae ūterentur castraque oppugnārent. Quī, etsī magnō⁸ aestū (nam ad merīdiem rēs erat perducta), tamen ad omnem
 20 labōrem animō parātī imperiō pārūerunt.⁹ Castra ā cohortibus, quae ibi praesidiō erant relictāe, industriē dēfendēbantur, multō etiam ācrius ā Thrācibus barbarisque auxiliis. Nam quī aciē refūgerant milītēs, et animō

diffidō, -ere, -fīsus sum, *despair of, distrust.*

clārē, *loudly.*
 industriē, *actively.*

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Modifies inquit. | 6. summae rei: <i>the outcome</i> |
| 2. praetōriam portam: <i>front of the battle.</i> | |
| gate. | 7. respīte. |
| 3. <i>protect.</i> | 8. magnō aestū: <i>abl. abs.</i> |
| 4. Pres. tense in sense of fut. | introduced by etsī. |
| 5. <i>the general's tent.</i> | 9. <i>obeyed.</i> |

perterriti et lassitudine cōfecti, missis¹ plērique armīs signisque militāribus magis dē reliquā fugā quam dē castrōrum dēfēsiōne cōgitābant. Neque² vērō diūtius, quī in vāllō cōstitērant, multitudinem tēlōrum sustinere
 5 potuerunt, sed cōfecti vulneribus locum reliquerunt prōtinusque omnēs ducibus³ ūsī centuriōnibus tribūnīsque militum in altissimōs montēs, quī ad castra pertinēbant, cōfūgērunt.

Caesar finds the camp luxuriously fitted up. Pompey escapes.

96. In castris Pompēi vidēre licuit trichilās strūctās,
 10 magnum argentī⁴ pondus expositum, recentibus cespiti-
 bus⁵ tabernācula⁶ cōstrāta, Lucī etiam Lentulī et
 nōnnūllōrum⁷ tabernācula prōtēcta edērā, multaue
 praetereā, quae nimiam lūxuriā et victōriae fidūciā
 dēsīgnārent,⁸ ut facile exīstimārī posset nihil eōs dē
 15 ēventū eius diēi timuisse, quī nōn⁹ necessāriās conquī-
 rent¹⁰ voluptātēs. At hī miserrimō ac patientissimō
 exercitūi Caesaris lūxuriā obiciēbant, cui semper omnia
 ad necessārium ūsum dēfuissent. Pompēius, iam cum
 intrā vāllum nostrī versārentur, equum nactus dētractīs¹¹
 20 īnsīgnibus imperātōris decumānā portā sē ex castris

trichila, -ae, f., *arbor*.

struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctum,
build.

cōnsternō, -ere, -strāvi, -strātum,

cover, pave.

edera, -ae, f., *ivy*.

nimius, -a, -um, *too much, excessive.*

1. *flung away.*

2. *neque vērō diūtius: and in fact not very long.*

3. In apposition with centuriōnibus and tribūnīs.

4. *silver plate.*

5. *sods.*

6. *tents.*

7. *of some others.*

8. *indicated.*

9. *nōn necessāriās: unnecessary.*

10. *Cf. quaerō.*

11. *dētractīs īnsīgnibus imperātōris: removing the decorations that belonged to him as general.*

ēiēcit prōtinusque equō citātō Lārīsam contendit. Neque ibi cōnstitit, sed eādem celeritāte paucōs¹ suōs ex fugā nactus nocturnō itinere nōn intermissō comitātū equitum trīgintā ad mare pervēnit nāvemque frūmen-
 5 tāriam cōnscendit saepe, ut dīcēbātur, querēns tantum² sē opiniōnem fefellisse, ut, ā quō genere hominum vic-
 tōriam spērāset, ab eō initiō fugae factō paene prōditus vidērētur.

Pompey's army retires to a hill and treats for peace.

97. Caesar castrīs potītus ā militibus contendit,³ nē
 10 in praedā occupātī reliquī⁴ negōtīi gerendī facultātem
 dīmitterent. Quā rē impetrātā montem opere circum-
 mūnīre instituit. Pompēiānī, quod is mōns erat sine
 aquā, diffīsī eī locō relictō monte ūniversī iugīs⁵ eius
 Lārīsam versus sē recipere coepērunt. Quā rē ani-
 15 madversā Caesar cōpiās suās dīvisit partemque legiōnum
 in castrīs Pompēi remanēre iussit, partem in sua castra
 remīsīt, quattuor sēcum legiōnēs dūxit commodiōreque
 itinere Pompēiānīs occurrere coepit⁶ et prōgressus
 mīlia passuum vi aciem instrūxit. Quā rē animadversā
 20 Pompēiānī in quōdam monte cōstitērunt. Hunc mon-
 tem flūmen subluēbat.⁷ Caesar militēs cohortātus, etsi
 tōtīus diēi continentī labōre erant cōfectī noxque iam
 suberat, tamen mūnitiōne flūmen ā monte sēclūsīt, nē
 noctū aquārī⁸ Pompēiānī possent. Quō perfectō opere

citātus, -a, -um, at full speed.

versus, prep., toward.

1. paucōs suōs: *a few of his own men.*

2. tantum . . . fefellisse: *that his expectations had so completely disappointed him.*

3. earnestly requested of.

4. Modifies negōtīi.

5. iugīs eius: *along its ridges, abl. of means.*

6. started.

7. washed the base of.

8. to get water.

illī dē dēditionē missīs lēgātīs agere coepērunt. Paucī
ōrdinis senātōriī, quī sē cum iīs coniūnxerant, nocte fugā
salūtem petivērunt.

After surrender, the Pompeians are pardoned by Caesar.

98. Caesar primā lūce omnēs eōs, quī in monte cōn-
5 sēderant, ex superiōribus locīs in plānitie dēscendere
atque arma prōicere iussit. Quod ubi sine recūsātiōne
fēcērunt passisque palmis prōiectī ad terram flentēs ab
eō salūtem petivērunt, cōsōlātus cōsurgere iussit et
10 pauca apud eōs dē lēnitātē¹ suā locūtus, quō minōre
essent timōre, omnēs cōservāvit mīlitibusque suis com-
mendāvit, nē quī eōrum violārētur, neu quid suī dēsiderā-
rent.² Hāc adhibitā diligentīā ex castrīs sibi legiōnēs
aliās occurrere et eās, quās sēcum dūxerat, in vicem
requiēscere atque in castra revertī iussit eōdemque diē
15 Lārīsam pervēnit.

The losses.

99. In eō proeliō nōn amplius cc mīlītēs dēsiderāvit,
sed centuriōnēs, fortēs virōs, circiter xxx āmīsīt. Inter-
fectus est etiam fortissimē pugnāns Crāstinus, cuius
mentiōnem suprā fēcimus, gladiō in³ ōs adversum
20 coniectō. Neque id fuit falsum, quod ille in pugnam
proficiscēns dīxerat. Sīc⁴ enim Caesar existimābat, eō
proeliō excellentissimam virtūtem Crāstinī fuisse optimē-
que eum dē sē meritum iūdicābat. Ex Pompēiānō exer-

senātōrius, -a, -um, *senatorial*.
recūsātiō, recūsātiōnis, f., *refusal*,
protest.
commendō, 1, *intrust, urge upon*.

violō, 1, *harm*.
in vicem, *in turn*.
requiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,
rest.

1. lēnitātē suā: *his well-known kindness*.

2. *lose*.

3. in ōs adversum: *full in the face*.

4. Explained by eō fuisse.

citū circiter milia xv cecidisse vidēbantur, sed in dē-
 ditiōnem vērunt amplius milia xxiv (namque etiam
 cohortēs, quae praesidiō in castellis fuerant, sēsē Sūllae
 dēdidērunt), multī praetereā in finitimās civitatēs refūgē-
 5 runt, sīgnaque militāria ex proeliō ad Caesarem sunt
 relāta CLXXX et aquilae IX. L. Domitius ex castris in
 montem refugiēns, cum virēs eum lassitudine dēfēcis-
 sent, ab equitibus est interfectus.

Caesar pursues Pompey, who sails away.

102. Caesar omnibus rēbus relictis persequendum
 10 sibi Pompēium exīstimāvit, quāscumque in partēs sē ex
 fugā recēpisset, nē rūrsus cōpiās comparāre aliās et
 bellum renovāre posset, et quantumcumque itineris
 equitātū efficere poterat cotidiē prōgrediēbātur legiōnem-
 que ūnam minōribus itineribus subsequi iussit. Erat
 15 ēdictum Pompēi nōmine Amphipoli prōpositum, uti
 omnēs eius prōvinciae iūniōrēs, Graeci civēsque Rōmāni,
 iūrandi causā convenirent. Sed utrum¹ āvertendae sus-
 piciōnis causā Pompēius prōposuisset, ut quam diūtis-
 simē longiōris fugae cōsiliū occultāret, an novīs dē-
 20 lēctibus,² si nēmō premeret, Macedoniam tenēre cōnārē-
 tur, exīstimārī³ nōn poterat. Ipse ad **ancoram** ūnā
 nocte cōstitit et vocātis ad sē Amphipoli hospitibus et
 pecūniā ad necessariōs sūmptūs⁴ corrogātā cōgnitō Cae-
 saris adventū ex eō locō discessit et Mytilēnās paucis

quantuscumque, -acumque, -um-
 cumque, *however much*.
 ēdictum, -ī, n., *proclamation*.
 iuvenis, iūnior, minimus natū,

young.
 ancora, -ae, f., *anchor*.
 corrogō, 1, *collect by asking, bor-
 row*.

1. utrum . . . an . . . cōnārē-
 tur: double indir. question; sub-
 ject of exīstimārī poterat.

2. *levies*.
 3. *determined*.
 4. *expense*.

diēbus vēnit. Bīdūm tempestāte retentus nāvibusque aliīs additis āctūāriīs¹ in Ciliciam atque inde Cyprum pervēnit. Ibi cōgnōscit cōsēnsū² omnium Antiochēnsium cīviumque Rōmānōrum, quī illic negōtiārentur, arcem captam esse exclūdendī suī causā nūntiōsque dīmissōs ad eōs, quī sē ex fugā in finitimās civitatēs recēpisse dicerentur, nē Antiochiām adirent: id sī fēcissent, magnō³ eōrum capitis periculō futūrum.

Pompey seeks protection from Ptolemy, king of Egypt.

103. Quibus cōgnitis rēbus Pompēius dēpositō ad-
eundae Syriae cōsiliō pecūniā societātis sublātā et ā
quibusdam prīvātis sūmptā et aeris⁴ magnō pondere
ad militārem ūsum in nāvēs impositō duōbusque mili-
bus hominum armātis, partim quōs ex familiis societā-
tum dēlēgerat, partim⁵ ā negōtiātōribus coēgerat, quōs
15 ex⁶ suis quisque ad hanc rem idōneōs existimābat,
Pēlūsium pervēnit. Ibi cāsū rēx erat Ptolemaeus, puer
aetāte, magnīs cōpiīs cum sorōre Cleopatrā bellum
gerēns, quā paucīs ante mēnsibus per suōs propinquōs
atque amīcōs rēgnō expulerat: castraque Cleopatrae
20 nōn longō spatiō ab eius castrīs distābant. Ad eum
Pompēius misit, ut prō hospitio atque amicitia patris
Alexandriā reciperētur atque illius opibus in calamitate
tegerētur. Sed quī ab eō missi erant, cōfectō lēgā-

negōtior, 1, *do business.*

societās, societātis, f., *alliance,*
tax collectors' company.

negōtiātor, negōtiātōris, m.; cf.
negōtior.

1. *swift.*

2. *concerted action,* modifies
captam esse.

3. magnō . . . periculō: *at the*
risk of their lives.

4. *money.*

5. Sc. quōs after the second
partim.

6. ex suis: *of his own*
friends.

tīōnis officiō, liberius cum militibus rēgis colloquī coepē-
runt eōsque hortārī, ut suum officium Pompēiō praestā-
rent¹ nēve eius fortūnam dēspicerent. In hōc erant
5 numerō complūrēs Pompēi militēs, quōs ex eius exercitū
acceptōs in Syriā Gabīnius Alexandriam trādūxerat
bellōque cōfectō apud Ptolemaeum, patrem pueri,
reliquerat.

But instead he is treacherously murdered.

104. Hīs tunc² cōgnitīs rēbus amīcī³ rēgis, quī propter
aetātem eius in cūratiōne erant rēgnī, sive timōre⁴ ad-
ductī, ut postea praedicābant, sollicitatō⁵ exercitū rēgiō
nē Pompēius Alexandriam Aegyptumque occupāret,
sive dēspectā eius fortūna, ut plērumque in calamitāte
ex amicis inimicī exsistunt, hīs, quī erant ab eō missī,
palam⁶ liberāliter respondērunt eumque ad rēgem venīre
15 iussērunt; ipsī clam cōsiliō initō Achillam, praefectum
rēgium, singulārī hominem audaciā, et L. Septimium,
tribūnum militum, ad interficiendum Pompēium mīsē-
runt. Ab hīs liberāliter⁷ ipse⁸ appellātus et quādam
nōtiā⁹ Septimiū prōductus, quod bellō praedōnum¹⁰
20 apud eum ōrdinem¹¹ dūxerat, nāviculam¹² parvulam cōn-
scendit cum paucis suis: ibi ab Achillā et Septimiō
interficitur. Item L. Lentulus comprehenditur ab rēge
et in custōdiā¹³ necātur.

cūratiō, cūratiōnis, f.; cf. cūrō.

rēgius, -a, -um; cf. rēx.

1. *do.*

2. *at this time.*

3. Subject of **respondērunt** and **iussērunt**.

4. Explained by **nē . . . oc-
cupāret**.

5. *stirred up.*

6. *openly*; contrast with **clam**.

7. **liberāliter** **appellātus**:

courteously addressed.

8. *i.e.* Pompey.

9. *acquaintance.*

10. *pirates.*

11. Here = *a century*.

12. *skiff.*

13. *prison.*

Caesar saves the temple of Diana from being plundered. Strange portents happen on the day of the battle of Pharsalus.

105. Caesar, cum in Asiam vēnisset, reperiēbat T. Ampium cōnātum esse pecūniās¹ tollere Ephesō ex fānō Diānae eiusque rei causā senātōres omnēs ex prōvinciā ēvocāsse, ut hīs testibus in² summā pecūniae
 5 ūterētur, sed interpellātum³ adventū Caesaris profūgisse. Ita duōbus temporibus Ephesiae pecūniae Caesar auxilium tulit. . . . Item cōstābat⁴ Ēlide in templō Minervae repetītis⁵ atque ēnumerātis diēbus, quō diē proelium secundum Caesar fēcisset, simulācrum
 10 Victōriae, quod antē ipsam Minervam collocātum esset et ante ad simulācrum Minervae spectāvisset, ad valvās sē templī limenque convertisse. Eōdemque diē Antiochiāe in Syriā bis tantus exercitūs clāmor et signōrum sonus exaudītus est, ut in mūrīs armāta civi-
 15 tās⁶ discurreret. Hoc idem Ptolemāide accidit, Pergamīque⁷ in occultis⁸ ac reconditis templī, quō praeter sacerdōtēs adire fās nōn est, quae Graeci ἄδυτα⁹ appellant, tympana sonuērunt. Item Trallibus in templō

fānum, -ī, n., *temple*.

ēnumerō, I, *count*.

valvae, -ārum, f., *folding doors*.

līmen, līminis, n., *entrance*.

sonus, -ī, m., *sound*.

discurro, -ere, -currī (-cucurrī),

-cursum, *run to and fro, run to one's place*.

reconditus, -ā, -um, *remote*.

sacerdōs, sacerdotis, m., *priest*.

tympanum, -ī, n., *drum*.

sonō, -ere, sonuī, sonitum, *sound*.

1. *treasures*.

2. in summā: *as to the amount*.

3. *prevented*.

4. *it was ascertained by reckoning*.

5. *reckoned backward*.

6. *body of citizens*.

7. *Locative*.

8. occultis et reconditis templī: *parts of the temple set aside and remote*.

9. (Greek): *inner sanctuaries*.

Victōriae, ubi Caesaris statuam cōsecrāverant, palma per eōs diēs inter coagmenta lapidum ex pavimentō exstitisse ostendēbātur.

Caesar arrives at Alexandria and learns of Pompey's death.

106. Caesar paucōs diēs in Asiā morātus cum audisset
5 set Pompēium Cyprī vīsum, coniectāns eum Aegyptum¹
iter habēre² propter necessitudinēs³ rēgnī reliquāsque
eius locī opportunitātēs, cum legiōne ūnā, quam sē ex
Thessaliā sequī iusserat, et alterā, quam ex Achāiā ā Q.
Fūfiō lēgātō ēvocāverat, equitibusque dccc et nāvibus
10 longīs Rhodiīs x et Asiaticīs paucīs Alexandriam per-
vēnit. In hīs erant legiōnibus hominum mīlia⁴ tria cc;
reliquī vulneribus ex proeliīs et labōre ac magnitudine
itineris cōfectī cōsequī nōn potuerant. Sed Caesar
cōnfisus fāmā rērum gestārum infirmīs auxiliīs proficiscī
15 nōn dubitāverat aequē omnem sibi locum tūtum fore
existimāns. Alexandriae dē Pompēi morte cōgnōscit.

statua, -ae, f., *statue*.

cōsecrō, 1, *consecrate*.

palma, -ae, f., *palm, palm tree*.

coagmentum, -ī, n., *joint*.

pavimentum, -ī, *pavement*.

coniectō, 1, *infer*.

aequē; cf. *aequus*.

1. The omission of the prep.
is unusual.

2. iter habēre: *was on the road*.

3. necessitudinēs rēgnī:
friendships in the kingdom.

4. mīlia tria cc: *only 3200*.

LIFE AND WORKS OF CORNELIUS NEPOS

OF the life and works of Cornelius Nepos, little is positively known. He was born in the town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B.C. 100. He died about B.C. 24. That he was well-to-do is evident from the fact that he was enrolled as a Roman knight, and he seems to have given his attention to literature and learning rather than to politics. Among his intimate friends were Cicero, Catullus, and Atticus.

It is clear that Nepos was a prolific writer, for we learn from various sources that he was the author of (a) *an outline of the world's history*; (b) *a treatise on Roman customs*; (c) *a detailed life of Cato the Censor*; (d) *a life of Cicero*; (e) *a work on geography*; (f) *De Viris Illustribus*. The last-named was divided into sixteen sections, as follows: — I. *De Regibus Exterarum Gentium*. II. *De Regibus Romanorum*. III. *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium*. IV. *De Excellentibus Ducibus Romanorum*. V. *De Iuris Consultis Graecis*. VI. *De Iuris Consultis Romanis*. VII. *De Oratoribus Graecis*. VIII. *De Oratoribus Romanis*. IX. *De Poetis Graecis*. X. *De Poetis Latinis*. XI. *De Historicis Graecis*. XII. *De Historicis Latinis*. XIII. *De Philosophis Graecis*. XIV. *De Philosophis Latinis*. XV. *De Grammaticis Graecis*. XVI. *De Grammaticis Latinis*. Of these, one has been preserved entire — *De Excellentibus Ducibus Exterarum Gentium* — and parts of two others — *De Regibus Exterarum Gentium* and *De Historicis Latinis*. From the first most of the following selections have been chosen and from the last the life of Cato.

The style of Nepos, though of the same period as that of Caesar and Cicero, shows some peculiarities of construction. As a writer he should be considered as an essayist rather than as a historian. His *Lives* are models of literary form rather than of historical accuracy.

I. MILTIADES

? - 488

He goes to the Chersonesus to establish a colony.

1. MILTIADES, Cīmōnis fīlius, Athēniēnsis, cum¹ et² antiquitāte³ generis et² glōriā³ maiōrum et² suā modestiā³ ūnus⁴ omnium maximē flōrēret, eāque⁵ esset aetāte ut nōn⁶ iam solum dē eō bene spērāre sed etiam
 5 cōfidere cīvēs possent suī tālem eum futūrum,⁷ quālem cōgnitum iūdicārun, accidit ut Athēniēnsēs Chersonēsum⁸ colōnōs vellent mittere. Cuius⁹ generis cum magnus numerus esset et multī eius dēmigrātiōnis peterent societātem,¹⁰ ex iis dēlēcti Delphōs dēliberātum¹¹
 10 missi sunt, quī cōsulerent Apollinem, quō¹² potissimum duce¹³ ūterentur. Namque tum Thrāces eās regiōnēs tenēbant, cum¹⁴ quibus armīs erat dīmicandū. Hīs

antīquitās, antīquitātis, f., *antiquity*.

modestia, -ae, f., *modesty*.

colōnus, -ī, m., *colonist*.

dēmigrātiō, dēmigrātiōnis, f., *emigration*.

potissimum, *especially, rather than any other*.

1. Causal.

2. et . . . et . . . et: *not only . . . and . . . but also*.

3. Abl. of cause.

4. ūnus omnium maximē flōrēret: *was the most conspicuous one of them all*.

5. eā aetāte: abl. of description.

6. nōn solum . . . iūdicārun: *his fellow citizens were able not only to hope much from him, but even to confidently expect that he would turn out to be such a man as they thought him (when he*

afterward became) known.

7. Sc. esse: depends on cōfidere.

8. Chersonēsum: Nepos treats this word as though it were the name of a town.

9. cuius generis: *of this sort (of people); i.e. would-be colonists*.

10. *alliance (with)*.

11. Supine.

12. Interrogative.

13. Predicate noun.

14. cum quibus: more often written quibuscum.

cōsulentibus nōminātim¹ Pŷthia praecēpit ut Miltiadem imperātōrem sibi sūmerent; id si fēcissent, incepta prōspera futūra.² Hōc ōrāculi respōnsō³ Miltiadēs cum dēlēctā manū classe⁴ Chersonēsum profectus, cum
 5 accessisset Lēmnum et incolās eius īnsulae sub potestātem redigere vellet Athēniēnsium, idque Lēmniī suā sponte facerent⁵ postulāset, illī irridentēs respondērunt tum id sē factūrōs, cum ille domō nāvibus proficiscēns ventō aquilōne vēnisset Lēmnum. Hīc enim ventus ab
 10 septentriōnibus oriēns adversum⁶ tenet Athēnīs⁷ proficiscentibus.⁸ Miltiadēs morandī tempus nōn habēns cursum dirēxit, quō tendēbat, pervēnitque Chersonēsum.

Brings Lemnos into the power of Athens.

2. Ibi brevī tempore barbarōrum cōpiīs disiectīs, tōtā regiōne, quam petierat, potitus, loca castellīs idōnea
 15 commūniit, multitūdinem, quam sēcum dūxerat, in agrīs collocāvit crēbrisque excursiōnibus locuplētāvit. Neque minus in eā rē prūdentiā quam fēlicitāte adiūtus est. Nam cum virtūte mīlitum dēvīcisset hostium exercitūs, summā⁹ aequitāte rēs cōstituit atque ipse ibidem manēre dēcrēvit. Erat¹⁰ enim inter eōs dignitatē rēgiā,

inceptum, -ī, n., *undertaking*.

prōsperus, -a, -um, *fortunate*.

ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*.

incola, -ae, m. and f., *inhabitant*.

aquilō, aquilōnis, m., *north wind*.

dirigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *direct*.

locuplētō, ī, *enrich*.

ibīdem, *in that very place*.

1. (*mentioning him*) by name; an unusual proceeding.

2. Sc. esse: inf. in indirect discourse depending on praecēpit.

3. Abl. of cause.

4. *by boat*.

5. Subjunct. representing imperat. in direct discourse.

6. adversum tenet: *blows straight against*.

7. Ablative.

8. Dat. with adversum.

9. summā . . . cōstituit: *arranged matters with the utmost fairness*.

10. erat . . . rēgiā: *for he held the position of king*.

quamquam carēbat nōmine, neque id¹ magis imperiō² quam iūstitiā cōsecūtus. Neque eō sētius Athēniēnsibus, ā quibus erat profectus, officia praestābat. Quibus rēbus fiēbat ut nōn minus eōrum voluntāte perpetuō imperium obtinēret quī miserant, quam illōrum cum quibus erat profectus. Chersonēsō³ tāli modō cōstitutā, Lēmnum revertitur et ex pactō⁴ postulat ut sibi urbem trādant. Illi enim dixerant, cum⁵ ventō boreā domō profectus eō pervēnisset, sēsē deditūrōs; sē⁶ autem domum Chersonēsī⁷ habēre. Cārēs, quī tum Lēmnum incolēbant, etsī praeter opīniōnem rēs ceciderat, tamen nōn dictō, sed secundā fortunā adversāriōrum capti, resistere ausi nōn sunt atque ex insulā dēmigrārunt. Parī fēlicitāte cēterās insulās, quae Cyclades nōminantur, sub
15 Athēniēnsium redēgit potestātem.

Tries to free the Greeks from Darius, but fails.

3. Iisdem temporibus Persārum rēx Dārīus, ex Asiā in Eurōpam exercitū trāiectō, Scythīs bellum inferre dēcrēvit. Pontem fēcit in⁸ Histrō flūmine, quā cōpiās trādūceret. Eius pontis, dum⁹ ipse abesset,¹⁰ custōdēs¹¹ reliquit prīncipēs, quōs sēcum ex Iōniā et Aeolide dūxerat; quibus¹² singulis suārum urbium perpetua dederat imperia. Sic enim facillimē putāvit sē Graecā linguā

boreās, -ae, m., north wind.

-
- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>that position.</i> | 7. Locative. |
| 2. <i>display of power.</i> | 8. <i>over.</i> |
| 3. Chersonēsō . . . cōstitutā:
<i>with matters in the Chersonesus
thus settled.</i> | 9. <i>as long as.</i> |
| 4. <i>agreement.</i> | 10. Subjunct. because of im-
plied indirect discourse. |
| 5. With pervēnisset. | 11. Appositive with prīncipēs. |
| 6. sē habēre: depends on a
word of saying understood. | 12. quibus singulis, etc.: <i>to
each of them he had given con-
trol over one city.</i> |

loquentēs quī Asiam incolerent sub suā retentūrum potestāte, sī amīcīs suis oppida tuenda trādidisset, quibus sē oppressō nūlla spēs salutis relinquerētur. In hōc fuit tum numerō Miltiadēs cui illa custōdia crēderētur.¹
 5 Hīc cum crēbrī adferrent nūntiī, male rem gerere



Bridge of Boats

Dārīum premīque ā Scythīs, Miltiadēs hortātus est pontis custōdēs nē ā fortunā² datam occāsiōnem liberandae Graeciae dīmitterent. Nam sī cum iīs cōpiīs quās sēcum trānsportārat interīssset Dārīus, nōn solum Eurō-
 10 pam fore tūtā, sed etiam eōs quī Asiam incolerent Graecī genere liberōs ā Persārum futūrōs dominātiōne et periculō:³ id et facile effīcī posse: ponte enim rescissō, rēgem vel hostium ferrō vel inopiā paucīs diēbus interitūrum. Ad hoc cōnsilium cum⁴ plērīque

dominātiō, dominātiōnis, f., *control*.

1. *could be intrusted.*

2. Personified, hence ā.

3. *danger (arising from it).*

4. *Concessive.*

accēderent, Histiaeus Milēsius nē rēs cōnficerētur ob-
stitit, dicēns nōn¹ idem ipsis quī summās imperiī tenē-
rent expedire et multītūdini, quod Dārīi rēgnō ipsōrum
nīterētur dominātiō: quō² exstinctō ipsōs³ potestāte
5 expulsōs cīvibus suis poenās datūrōs. Itaque adeō sē
abhorrere ā cēterōrum cōnsiliō ut nihil putet ipsis ūti-
lius quam cōfirmārī rēgnum Persārum. Huius cum
sententiam plūrimī essent secūtī, Miltiadēs, nōn⁴ dubi-
tāns tam⁵ multis cōnsciīs ad rēgis aurēs⁶ cōnsilia sua
10 perventūra, Chersonēsum reliquit ac rūsus Athēnās
dēmigrāvit. Cuius ratiō etsī nōn valuit, tamen magnō
opere est laudanda, cum amīcior omnium libertātī quam
suae fuerit dominātiōnī.

Darius invades Greece.

4. Dārīus autem, cum ex Eurōpā in Asiam redisset,
15 hortantibus amīcīs ut Graeciam redigeret in suam pote-
stātem, classem quīngentārum nāvium comparāvit eīque
Dātim praefēcit et Artaphernem, hīsque ducenta⁷ pedi-
tum, decem equitum milia dedit, causam⁸ interserēns sē
hostem⁹ esse Athēniēnsibus, quod eōrum auxiliō Iōnēs

obstō, -āre, -stitī, —, *oppose.*

abhorreō, -ēre, -horruī, —, *shrink from, dissent from.*

interserō, -ere, —, —, *en-
twine, assign.*

1. nōn idem . . . multītūdini:
*one and the same (course) was
not equally advantageous for
those men who held the chief con-
trol and for the great bulk of
people.*

2. i.e. Darius.

3. ipsōs cīvibus . . . datūrōs:
*they themselves would suffer pun-
ishment at the hands of their
subjects.*

4. nōn dubitāns: Nepos here
uses the infinitive where most
writers use quīn with the sub-
junctive.

5. tam . . . cōnsciīs: *with so
many in the secret.*

6. ears.

7. Sc. milia.

8. as a reason.

9. Here as an adj. with the
dative.

Sardis¹ expugnāssent suaque praesidia interfēcissent. Illi praefecti² rēgiī, classe ad Euboeam appulsā, celeriter Eretriam cēpērunt omnēsque eius gentis civēs abreptōs³ in Asiam ad rēgem mīsērunt. Inde ad Atticam accessērunt ac suās cōpiās in campum Marathōna dēdūxērunt. Is abest ab oppidō circiter mīlia passuum decem. Hōc tumultū Athēniēnsēs tam propinquō tamque magnō permōtī, auxilium nusquam nisi ā Lacedaemoniis petivērunt Phīdippumque cursōrem eius generis, quī hēmerodromoe⁴ vocantur, Lacedaemonem mīsērunt, ut nūntiāret quam⁵ celerī opus esset auxiliō. Domī autem creant decem praetōrēs,⁶ quī exercituī praecessent, in iīs Miltiādem. Inter quōs magna fuit contentiō, utrum moenibus sē dēfenderent, an obviam īrent hostibus aciēque dēcernerent.⁷ Ūnus⁸ Miltiādēs maximē nītēbātur, ut⁹ primō quōque tempore castra fierent; id sī factum esset, et¹⁰ civibus animum accessūrum, cum vidērent dē eōrum virtūte nōn dēspērārī,¹¹ et¹² hostēs eādem rē fore tardiorēs, sī animadverterent audērī¹³ adversus sē tam exiguis¹⁴ cōpiis dīmīcārī.¹⁵

The battle of Marathon.

5. Hōc in tempore¹¹ nūlla civitās Athēniēnsibus auxiliō fuit praeter Plataeēnsēs. Ea mille mīsīt mīlitum.

nusquam, *nowhere.*

cursor, cursōris, m., *runner.*

hēmerodromoe (Greek), *day-*

runner.

obviam, *in the way of*; with eō, *go to meet.*

1. Accusative.

2. *officers.*

3. *carried off.*

4. quam . . . auxiliō: *what a need there was of speedy help.*

5. *generals.*

6. ūnus . . . nītēbātur: *Miltiades alone was very insistent.*

7. ut primō . . . fierent: *that they take the field at the first instant possible.*

8. et . . . et: *not only . . . but also.*

9. Impersonal.

10. *small.*

11. *crisis.*

Itaque hōrum adventū decem milia armātōrum complēta sunt, quae manus mirābili flagrābat pugnandī cupiditāte. Quō factum est ut plūs quam collēgae Miltiadēs valeret. Eius ergō auctōritāte impulsī Athēniēnsēs cōpiās ex
 5 urbe ēdūxērunt locōque idōneō castra fēcērunt. Dein posterō diē sub montis rādīcibus aciē¹ regiōne instrūctā nōn apertissimā (namque arborēs multīs locīs erant rārae) proelium commīsērunt hōc cōnsiliō, ut et montium altitudīne tegerentur et arborum trāctū equitātus ho-
 10 stium impedīrētur, nē multitudīne clauderentur. Dātis, etsī nōn² aequum locum vidēbat suīs, tamen frētus nūmerō cōpiārum suārum cōnflīgere cupiēbat, eōque magis, quod priusquam Lacedaemoniī subsidiō venīrent, dīmīcāre ūtile arbitrābātur. Itaque in aciem peditum
 15 centum,³ equitum decem milia prōdūxit proeliumque commīsīt. In quō tantō⁴ plūs virtūte valuērunt Athēniēnsēs ut decemplex numerum hostium prōflīgārīnt, adeōque eōs perterrūērunt ut Persae nōn castra, sed nāvēs petierint. Quā pugnā nihil adhūc exstitit nōbi-
 20 lius; nūlla enim umquam tam exigua manus tantās⁵ opēs prōstrāvīt.⁶

Miltiades is rewarded.

6. Cuius⁷ victōriae nōn aliēnum vidētur quāle prae-
 mium Miltiadī sit tribūtum docēre, quō⁸ facilius intellegī
 possit eandem omnium cīvitatū esse nātūrā. Ut

mirābilis, -e, *wonderful, strange.*

flagrō, I, *burn.*

collēga, -ae, m., *colleague.*

trāctus, -ūs, m., *drawing, line.*

decemplex, decemplicis, *tenfold.*

adhūc, *up to this time.*

1. Abl. abs. with instrūctā.

2. nōn aequum = inīquum.

3. Sc. milia.

4. Abl. of degree of difference.

5. tantās opēs: *such power.*

6. *laid low.*

7. cuius victōriae, etc.: *it does not seem out of place to tell what sort of reward for this victory was given to Miltiades.*

8. quō: *used for ut.*

enim populī Rōmānī honōrēs quondam fuērunt rārī et tenuēs¹ ob eamque causam glōriōsī, nunc autem effūsī atque obsolētī, sic ōlim apud Athēniēnsēs fuisse reperimus. Namque huic Miltiadī, quī Athēnās tōtamque
 5 Graeciam liberārat, tālis² honōs tribūtus est, in porticū, quae Poecilē vocātur, cum pugna dēpingerētur Marathōnia, ut in decem praetōrum numerō prīma³ eius imāgō pōnerētur⁴ isque hortārētur⁴ mīlitēs proeliumque committeret.⁴ Idem ille populus, posteaquam maius
 10 imperium est nactus et largitiōne magistrātuum corruptus⁵ est, trecentās statuās Dēmētriō Phalēreō dēcrēvit.

He makes an unsuccessful expedition against the Cyclades, is accused of treason, thrown into prison, and dies.

7. Post hoc proelium classem septuāgintā nāvium Athēniēnsēs eīdem Miltiadī dedērunt, ut īsulās, quae
 15 barbarōs adiūverant, bellō persequerētur. Quō in imperiō plērāsque ad officium⁶ redire coēgit, nōnnūllās vī expugnāvit. Ex hīs⁷ Parum īsulam opibus ēlātam cum ōrātiōne⁸ reconciliāre nōn posset, cōpiās ē nāvibus ēdūxit, urbem operibus clausit omnīque commeātū prīvā-
 20 vit; dein vīneīs ac testūdīnibus cōstitutīs propius mūrōs

quondam, *once*.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, *famous*.

effūsus, -a, -um, *lavish*.

obsolētus -a, -um, *worthless*.

ōlim, *formerly*.

porticus, -ūs, f., *colonnade*.

dēpingō, -ere, -pīnxī, -pīctum, *paint*.

imāgō, imāginis, f., *likeness, portrait*.

reconciliō, I, *bring together again, win back*.

1. *simple*.

2. *such*.

3. *in the foreground*.

4. Miltiades was represented as addressing his men and giv-

ing the signal for battle.

5. *corruptus est*: *was bribed*.

6. *allegiance*.

7. *i.e. īsulīs*.

8. *argument*.

accessit. Cum ¹ iam in eō esset ut oppidō potirētur, procul in continentī ² lūcus, quī ex insulā cōspiciēbātur, nesciō ³ quō cāsū nocturnō tempore incēnsus est. Cuius flamma ut ab oppidānīs et oppugnātōribus est vīsa, 5 utrīsque ⁴ vēnit in opīniōnem sīgnū ā classiāriīs rēgiīs datum. Quō factum est ut et Parii ā dēditionē dēterrērentur et Miltiadēs, timēns nē classis rēgia adventāret, incēnsīs operibus quae statuerat, cum totidem ⁵ nāvibus atque erat profectus, Athēnās magnā cum offēnsiōne 10 cīvium suōrum redīret. Accūsātus ergō est prōditionis, quod, cum Parum expugnāre posset, ā rēgē corruptus infectis ⁶ rēbus discessisset. Eō tempore aeger erat vulneribus, quae in oppugnandō oppidō accēperat. Itaque cum ipse prō sē dicere nōn posset, verba fēcit frāter eius 15 Stēsagorās. Causā cōgnitā, capitis ⁷ absolūtus pecūniā multātus est, eaque lis quīnquāgintā talentis aestimāta est, quantus in classem sūmptus factus erat. Hanc pecūniā quod solvere ⁸ in praesentiā nōn poterat, in vincula pūblica coniectus est ibique diem obiit ⁹ suprē- 20 mum.

lūcus, -ī, m., *grove*.

oppugnātor, oppugnātōris, m.; cf. oppugnō.

classiārius, -a, -um; as a substantive in plu., *seamen*.

adventō, i, *arrive*.

prōdiō, prōditionis, f., *treason*.

absolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtum, *free from*.

multō, i, *fine*.

līs, lītis, f., *lawsuit, damages*.

talentum, -ī, n., *talent*; Greek sum of money, amounting to about \$1100.

1. cum . . . potirētur: *just as he was on the point of taking the town*.

2. continent.

3. nesciō quō = aliquō.

4. utrīsque . . . opīniōnem: *it occurred to both*.

5. totidem atque: *same number as*.

6. infectis rēbus: *with his purpose unaccomplished*.

7. capital punishment.

8. pay.

9. met.

Another reason for his imprisonment.

8. Hīc etsī crīmine Pariō est accūsātus, tamen alia
 causa fuit damnātiōnis. Namque Athēniēnsēs propter
 Pīsistratī tyrannidem, quae paucis annis ante fuerat,
 omnium civium suōrum potentiam extimēscēbant. Mil-
 5 tiadēs, multum in imperiis magistrātibusque versātus,
 nōn vidēbātur posse esse prīvātus,¹ praesertim cum cōn-
 suētūdine ad imperiū cupiditātem trahī vidērētur. Nam
 Chersonēsī, omnēs illōs quōs habitārat annōs, perpetuam
 obtinuerat dominātiōnem, tyrannusque fuerat appellātus,
 10 sed iūstus. Nōn erat² enim vī cōnsecūtus, sed suōrum
 voluntāte, eamque potestātem bonitāte retinēbat. Om-
 nēs autem et dīcuntur et habentur tyrannī, quī potestāte
 sunt perpetuā in eā civitāte, quae libertāte ūsa est. Sed
 in Miltiade erat cum summa hūmānitās, tum mīra com-
 15 mūnitās, ut nēmō tam humilis esset, cui nōn ad eum
 aditus patēret; magna auctōritās³ apud omnēs civitātēs,
 nōbile nōmen, laus rei mīlitāris maxima. Haec populus
 respiciēns⁴ māluit illum innoxium plectī quam sē diūtius
 esse in timōre.

crīmen, crīminis, n., *charge*.

extimēscō, -ere, -timuī, —, *fear*.

habitō, I, *reside*.

tyrannus, -ī, m., *tyrant*.

commūnitās, commūnitātis, f.,

affability.

innoxius, -a, -um, *harmless, inno-
cent*.

plectō, -ere, —, —; in passive,
suffer punishment.

1. *a mere private citizen*.

2. erat cōnsecūtus: sc. tyrannidem.

3. auctōritās, etc.: sc. eīque erat.

4. *considering*.

II. THEMISTOCLES

C. 527-C. 460

His early life.

1. THEMISTOCLES, Neoclī filius, Athēniēnsis. Huius vitia¹ ineuntis adulēscētiaē magnīs sunt ēmendāta virtūtibus, adeō ut anteferātur² huic nēmō, paucī parēs putentur. Sed ab initiō est ōrdiendus. Pater eius
 5 Neoclēs generōsus fuit. Is uxōrem Acarnānam cīvem dūxit,³ ex quā nātus est Themistoclēs. Quī cum minus⁴ esset probātus parentibus, quod et liberius vivēbat et rem familiārem neglegēbat, ā patre exhērēdātus est. Quae contumēlia nōn frēgit eum, sed ērēxit.⁵ Nam
 10 cum iūdicāset sine summā industriā nōn posse eam⁶ extingui,⁷ tōtum sē dēdidit rei pūblīcae, diligētiū amīcīs fāmaeque⁸ serviēns. Multum in iūdicīis⁹ privātis versābātur, saepe in cōtiōnem¹⁰ populī prōdibat; nulla rēs maior¹¹ sine eō gerēbātur, celeriter quae opus
 15 erant repēiebāt, facile eadem¹² ōrātiōne explicābat.¹³ Neque minus in rēbus gerendis prōmptus¹⁴ quam excōgītandis erat, quod et dē īstantibus,¹⁵ ut ait Thūcýdidēs,

ēmendō, 1, *compensate for.*ōrdior, -īrī, ōrsus sum, *begin, describe.*generōsus, -a, -um, *well-born.*exhērēdō, 1, *disinherit.*serviō, 4, *serve, devote one's self.*āiō, defective; imperf. āiēbam, *say.*1. *faults.*

2. Cf. ferō.

3. Sc. in mātīmōnium.

4. minus . . . probātus: *not wholly approved of.*5. *roused.*

6. Sc. contumēliam.

7. *blot out.*8. *reputation.*9. *trials.*10. *assembly.*11. *more important (than usual).*12. *i.e. ea quae opus erant.*13. *explained.*14. *ready.*15. īstantibus (rēbus): *present matters.*

vērissimē iūdicābat et dē futūrīs callidissimē coniciēbat.¹
Quō factum est ut brevī tempore illūstrārētur.

Xerxes invades Greece but is defeated. Themistocles interprets an oracle of Apollo.

2. Prīmus autem gradus fuit capessendae reī pūblicae
bellō Corcȳraeō; ad quod gerendum praetor ā populō
5 factus, nōn solum praesentī bellō, sed etiam reliquō tem-
pore ferōciōrem reddidit civitātem. Nam cum pecūnia
pūblica, quae ex metallīs redibat, largitiōne² magistrā-
tuum quotannis interīret,³ ille persuāsit populō ut eā
pecūniā classis centum nāvium aedificārētur. Quā
10 celeriter effectā primum Corcȳraeōs frēgit, deinde
maritimōs⁴ praedōnēs cōsectandō mare tūtum reddidit.
In⁵ quō cum divitiīs ōrnāvit, tum etiam perītissimōs
belli nāvālis fēcit Athēniēnsēs.⁶ Id quantae⁷ salūtī
fuerit ūniversae Graeciae, bellō cōgnitum est Persicō.
15 Nam⁸ cum Xerxēs et marī et terrā bellum ūniversae
īferret Eurōpae cum tantīs cōpiīs, quantās⁹ neque ante
nec postea habuit quisquam: huius enim classis mīlle
et ducentārum nāvium longārum fuit, quam duō mīlia
oneriārīarum sequēbantur, terrestres autem exercitūs
20 septingenta peditum, equitum quadringenta mīlia fuē-

vērē, truly, accurately.

callidē, shrewdly.

illūstrō, I, make famous.

gradus, -ūs, m., step, stage.

capessō, -ere, capessivī, capessī-
tum, take eagerly, undertake.

ferōx, ferōcis, wild, warlike.

metallum, -i, n., mine.

divitiae, -arum, f., riches.

ōrnō, I, provide with.

terrestris, -e, belonging to the
land, land.

1. guessed.

2. lavish giving.

3. was lost.

4. maritimōs praedōnēs: pi-
rates.

5. in quō: in so doing.

6. Obj. of ōrnāvit and fēcit.

7. quantae salūtī: how help-
ful.

8. nam cum, etc.: this clause
is not completed but, after the
parenthetical huius . . . fuērunt,
is taken up in another form.

9. as.

runt: — cuius dē adventū cum fāma in Graeciam esset perlāta et maximē¹ Athēniēnsēs petī dīcerentur propter pugnam Marathōniam, mīserunt Delphōs cōsultum, quidnam facerent dē rēbus suis. Dēliberantibus²
 5 Pŷthia respondit ut moenibus ligneis sē mūnīrent. Id³ respōnsum quō valēret cum intellexeret nēmō, Themistoclēs persuāsit⁴ cōsiliū esse Apollinis ut in nāvēs sē suaue cōferrent; eum⁵ enim ā deō sīgnificārī mūrū lignēum. Tālī cōsiliō probātō, addunt
 10 ad superiōrēs⁶ totidem nāvēs trirēmēs suaue omnia quae movērī poterant partim Salamīna, partim Troezēna dēportant; arcem sacerdotibus paucisque maiōribus nātū ad sacra prōcūranda trādunt, reliquū oppidū relinquunt.

Battles at Thermopylae and near Artemisium.

15 3. Huius cōsiliū plērisque civitatibus displicēbat et in terrā dimicārī magis placēbat. Itaque missi sunt dēlecti cum Leōnidā, Lacedaemoniōrū rēge, quī Thermopylās occupārent longiusque barbarōs prōgredi nōn paterentur. Ii vim hostiū nōn sustinuērunt eoque
 20 locō omnēs interiērunt. At classis commūnis Graeciae trecentārum nāvium, in quā ducentae erant Athēniēnsiū, primum apud Artemisium inter Euboeam

lignēus, -a, -um, *wooden, made of wood.*

trirēmīs, -e, *with three banks of oars; as substantive, trireme.*

dēportō, 1; cf. portō.

sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred; here as substantive, sacred rites.*

prōcūrō, 1, *care for, manage.*

displicēō, -ēre, -plicuī, -plicitum, *displease.*

1. maximē . . . dīcerentur: *lit. the Athenians were said to be aimed at particularly.*

2. seeking advice.

3. id . . . valēret: *what this reply meant.*

4. convinced; note the infinitive with this verb.

5. eum . . . lignēum: *that kind of wooden wall was indicated by the god.*

6. the former ones.

continentemque terram cum classiariis regiis cōfligit. Angustiās enim Themistoclēs quaerēbat nē multitudīne circumīrētur. Hinc etsī parī¹ proeliō discesserant, tamen eōdem locō nōn sunt ausī manēre, quod erat perīculum,
 5 nē, sī pars nāvium adversariōrum Euboeam superāset,² ancipitī premerentur perīculō. Quō factum est ut ab Artemisiō discēderent et exadversum Athēnās apud Salamīna classem suam cōstituerent.

Xerxes seizes and destroys Athens. Battle of Salamis.

4. At Xerxēs, Thermopylis expugnātis, prōtinus acces-
 10 sit astū idque, nullīs dēfendentibus, interfectis sacerdoti-
 bus, quōs in arce invēnerat, incendiō dēlēvit. Cuius flammā perterritī classiarii cum manēre nōn audērent et plūrimī hortārentur ut domōs suās discēderent moeni-
 busque sē dēfenderent, Themistoclēs ūnus restitit et
 15 ūniversōs³ parēs⁴ esse posse aiēbat, dispersōs testābatur peritūrōs, idque⁵ Eurybiadī,⁶ rēgī Lacedaemoniōrum, quī tum summae imperiī praeerat, fore adfirmābat. Quem cum minus quam vellet movēret, noctū dē⁷ servīs suis quem habuit fidēlissimum ad rēgem⁸ mīsīt, ut eī
 20 nūntiāret, suīs⁹ verbīs, adversariōs eius¹⁰ in fugā esse; quī sī discessissent, maiōre cum labōre et longinquiōre tempore bellum cōfectūrum, cum singulōs cōsectārī cōgerētur; quōs sī statim aggredērētur, brevī¹¹ ūniversōs

exadversum, prep., *opposite*.
 astū, indeclin., n., *city*.

testor, I, *bear witness, assert*.
 adfirmō, I; cf. cōfirmō.

1. *undecided.*

2. *sailed past.*

3. *if united.*

4. *equal to the occasion.*

5. Subject of fore.

6. Modifies adfirmābat.

7. dē servīs suis: sc. eum.

8. *i.e.* Xerxes.

9. suīs verbīs: *i.e.* speaking
 for Themistocles.

10. *i.e.* Xerxes.

11. = brevī tempore.

oppressūrum. Hoc¹ eō valēbat, ut ingrātiis ad dēpugnandum omnēs cōgerentur. Hāc rē audītā barbarus, nihil dolī subesse crēdēns, postrīdiē aliēnissimō sibi locō,



Painting by F. Cormon.

Return of the Greeks from Salamis

5 contrā opportūnissimō hostibus, adeō angustō marī cōn-
flict, ut eius multitudō nāvium explicārī² nōn potuerit.
Victus ergō est magis etiam cōsiliō Themistoclī quam
armīs Graeciae.

Xerxes returns to Asia on the advice of Themistocles.

5. Hic³ etsī male rem gesserat, tamen tantās habēbat
reliquiās cōpiārum, ut etiam tum iīs opprimere posset

ingrātiis, *unwillingly, under com-
pulsion.*

reliquiae, -ārum, f., *remainder,
remnants.*

dēpugnō, 1, *fight it out.*

1. hoc eō valēbat: *the plan
of this was.*

2. *spread out.*
3. Adverb.

hostēs. Iterum ab eōdem¹ gradū² dēpulsus est. Nam Themistoclēs, verēns nē bellāre persevērāret certiōrem eum fēcīt id³ agī, ut pōns, quem ille in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur⁴ ac reditū in Asiam exclūderētur;⁵ idque eī persuāsīt. Itaque, quā sex mēnsibus iter fēcerat, eādem⁶ minus diēbus trīgintā in Asiam reversus est sēque ā Themistocle nōn superātum, sed cōservātum iūdicāvit. Sic ūnūs virī prūdentiā Graecia liberāta est Eurōpaeque succubuit⁷ Asia. Haec est altera victōria quae cum Marathōniō possit comparārī tropaeō. Nam parī modō apud Salamīna parvō numerō nāvium maxima post hominum memoriā classis est dēvicta.

The Spartans object to the rebuilding of Athens. Themistocles goes to them as an ambassador.

6. Magnus hōc bellō Themistoclēs fuit neque minor in pāce. Cum enim Phalēricō portū néque magnō neque bonō Athēniēnsēs ūterentur, huius cōsiliō triplex⁸ Pīraei portus cōstitūtus est eisque moenibus circumdatus, ut ipsam urbem dignitāte⁹ aequiperāret, ūtilitāte¹⁰ superāret. Idem mūrōs Athēniēnsium restituit prae-cipuo suō periculō. Namque Lacedaemoniī, causam¹¹ idōneam nactī propter barbarōrum excursiōnēs quā¹² negārent oportēre extrā Peloponnēsum ūllam urbem mūrōs habēre, nē essent loca mūnīta, quae hostēs possi-

tropaeum, -ī, n., *trophy, victory.*
aequiperō, 1, *compare, rival.*

possidō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, *oc-*
cupy, seize.

1. Abl. of agent.
2. gradū dēpulsus est: *he was deprived of his advantage.*
3. id agī: *this plan was being considered.*
4. *cut down.*
5. Sc. Xerxēs.
6. Sc. viā.

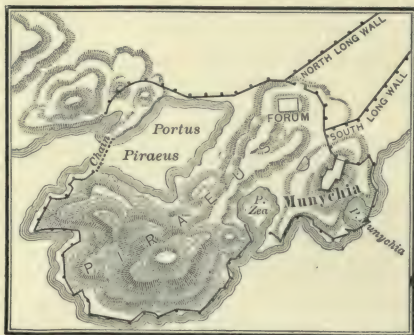
7. *gave way.*
8. *i.e. with three basins.*
9. *grandeur.*
10. Cf. ūtilis.
11. causam idōneam: *a likely pretense.*
12. quā negārent: *for saying . . . not.*

derent, Athēniēnsēs aedificantēs prohibēre sunt cōnātī. Hoc longē¹ aliō spectābat atque vidērī volēbant. Athēniēnsēs enim duābus victōriīs, Marathōniā et Salaminiā, tantam glōriam apud omnēs gentēs erant cōsecūtī, ut

5

10

15



The Piraeus

intellegerent Lacedaemoniī dē principiātū sibi cum iis certāmen fore. Quārē eōs quam infirmīssimōs esse volēbant. Postquam autem audierunt mūrōs struī,² lēgātōs Athēnās mīsērunt, quī id fierī vetārent. Hīs praesentibus dēsiē-

runt³ ac sē dē eā rē lēgātōs ad eōs missūrōs dixerunt.

Hanc lēgatiōnem suscepit Themistoclēs et sōlus primō
 20 profectus est; reliquī⁴ lēgātī ut tum exīrent, cum satis
 altī tuendō⁵ mūrī exstrūctī vidērentur, praecēpit: inter-
 rim omnēs, servī atque liberī, opus facerent neque ūllī
 locō parcerent, sive sacer sive profānus, sive prīvātus
 esset sive pūblicus, et undique, quod idōneum ad mūni-
 25 endum putārent, congererent. Quō factum est ut Athē-
 niēnsium mūrī ex sacellis sepulcrisque cōstārent.⁶

profānus, -a, -um, *profane, un-
 holy.*

sacellum, -ī, n., *shrine.*
 sepulcrum, -ī, n., *tomb.*

1. longē . . . spectābat atque:
*had quite a different meaning
 than.*

2. *being built.*

3. Sc. Athēniēnsēs as subject.

4. reliquī . . . ut . . . exīrent:
 depends on praecēpit.

5. *for defense.*

6. *consisted of (material);
 substantive result.*

He outwits the Spartans and Athens is rebuilt.

7. Themistoclēs autem, ut Lacedaemonem vēnit, adīre ad magistrātūs nōluit et dedit ¹ operam, ut quam longissimē tempus dūceret, causam interpōnēns sē collēgās exspectāre. Cum Lacedaemoniī quererentur opus
 5 nihilō minus fieri eumque in eā rē cōnārī fallere, interim reliquī lēgātī sunt cōnsecūtī. Ā quibus cum audisset nōn multum superesse mūnitiōnis, ad ephorōs Lacedaemoniōrum accessit, penes quōs summum erat imperium, atque apud eōs contendit falsa ² iīs esse dēlāta; quārē
 10 aequum esse illōs ³ virōs bonōs nōbilēsque mittere, quibus fidēs habērētur, quī rem explōrārent; intereā sē obsidem retinērent. Gestus ⁴ est ei mōs, trēsque lēgātī fūctī summīs honōribus Athēnās missī sunt. Cum hīs collēgās suōs Themistoclēs iussit proficīscī iīsque prae-
 15 dīxit ut nē prius Lacedaemoniōrum lēgātōs dīmitterent quam ipse esset remissus. Hōs postquam Athēnās pervēnisse ratus est, ad magistrātūs senātumque Lacedaemoniōrum adiit et apud eōs liberrimē professus ⁵ est: Athēniēnsēs suō ⁶ cōnsiliō, quod ⁷ commūnī iūre gentium
 20 facere possent, deōs ⁸ pūblicōs suōsque patriōs ac penātēs, quō facilius ab hoste possent dēfendere, mūrīs saep-

ephorus, -ī, m., *ephor* (a *magistrate*).

penes, prep., *in the hands of*.

fungor, -ī, fūctus sum, *perform*, *fill*.

reor, rērī, ratus sum, *think*.

penātēs, -ium, m., *household gods*.

saepiō, -īre, saepsī, saeptum, *protect*.

1. dedit operam: *took pains*.

2. falsa . . . dēlāta: *false reports had been brought to them*.

3. Subject of mittere, which has virōs for object. Refers to the ephors,

4. gestus . . . mōs: *his wish was carried out*.

5. professus est: *talked*.

6. suō cōnsiliō: *by his advice*.

7. a thing which.

8. Object of saepsisse.

sisse, neque in¹ eō quod inūtile esset Graeciae fēcisse. Nam illōrum urbem ut² prōpugnāculum oppositum³ esse barbaris, apud⁴ quam iam bis classēs rēgiās fēcisse naufragium. Lacedaemoniōs autem male et iniūstē
5 facere, quī id potius intuērentur, quod ipsōrum dominātiōnī quam quod ūniversae Graeciae ūtile esset. Quārē, sī suōs lēgātōs recipere vellent, quōs Athēnās miserant, sē remitterent, cum aliter illōs numquam in patriam essent receptūrī.

Themistocles is banished.

10 8. Tamen nōn effūgit cīvium suōrum invidiam.⁵ Namque ob eundem timōrem quō⁶ damnātus erat Miltiadēs, testulārum⁷ suffrāgiis ē cīvitatē ēiectus, Argōs⁸ habitātum concessit. Hīc cum propter multās virtūtēs magnā cum dignitatē viveret, Lacedaemoniū lēgātōs
15 Athēnās mīsērunt, quī eum absentem accūsārent, quod societātem⁹ cum rēge Persē¹⁰ ad Graeciam opprimendam fēcisset. Hōc crimine absēns prōditiōnis¹¹ damnātus est. Id ut audīvīt, quod nōn satis tūtum sē Argīs vidēbat, Corcȳram dēmigrāvit. Ibi cum eius¹² prīncipēs
20 animadvertisset timēre, nē propter sē bellum iīs Lacedaemoniū et Athēniēnsēs indicerent, ad Admētum, Molosūm rēgem, cum quō eī hospitium¹³ erat, cōnfūgit. Hūc

prōpugnāculum, -ī, n., *barrier*.
naufragium, -ī, n., *shipwreck*.
iniūstē, *unjustly*.

effugiō; cf. fugiō.
testula, -ae, f., *voting tablet*.
ēiciō; cf. iaciō.

1. in eō: *thereby*.
2. ut prōpugnāculum: *as an outpost*: pred. noun after esse.
3. *built against*.
4. apud quam = et apud eam.
5. *ill will*.
6. *because of which*.

7. testulārum suffrāgiis: *i.e.* votes written on bits of pottery.
8. Acc. plural.
9. *alliance*.
10. Greek for Persā.
11. Modifies damnātus est.
12. Sc. insulae.
13. *guest-friendship*.

cum vēnisset et in praesentiā rēx abesset, quō maiōre
 religiōne¹ sē² receptum tuērētur, filiā eius parvulam
 arripuit et cum eā sē in sacrārium, quod summā colēbā-
 tur caerimōniā, coniēcit. Inde nōn prius ēgressus est
 5 quam rēx eum, datā dextrā, in fidem reciperet; quam
 praestitit.³ Nam cum ab Athēniēnsibus et Lacedae-
 moniīs expōscerētur pūblicē, supplicem nōn prōdidit
 monuitque⁴ ut cōnsuleret sibi: difficile enim esse in
 tam propinquō locō tūtō⁵ eum versārī. Itaque Pydnam
 10 eum dēdūcī iussit et quod satis esset praesidiū dedit.
 Hic in nāvem omnibus ignōtus nautīs ēscendit. Quae
 cum tempestāte maximā Naxum ferrētur, ubi tum Athēni-
 ēnsium erat exercitus, sēnsit Themistoclēs, sī eō pervē-
 nisset, sibi esse pereundum. Hāc necessitatē coāctus
 15 dominō nāvis, quis sit, aperit, multa pollicēns, sī sē cōn-
 servāset. At ille, clārissimī virī captus misericordiā,⁶
 diem noctemque procul ab īsulā in salō nāvem tenuit
 in ancorīs neque quemquam ex eā exīre passus est.
 Inde Ephesum pervenit ibique Themistoclēn expōnit:
 20 cui ille prō meritīs postea grātiā rettulit.

He writes to King Artaxerxes tendering his aid.

9. Sciō plērōsque ita scrīpsisse, Themistoclēn Xerxe
 rēgnante⁷ in Asiam trānsisse. Sed ego potissimum
 Thūcŷdidī crēdō, quod et aetātē⁸ proximus dē iīs, quī

arripiō, -ere, -ripiū, -reptum, *seize.* ēscendō, -ere, -scendī, -scēsum,
 sacrārium, -ī, n., *sanctuary.* *embark.*
 caerimōnia, -ae, f., *sacred rite,* salum, -ī, n., *deep sea.*
reverence.

-
- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>fear of the gods.</i> | 4. -que: <i>but.</i> |
| 2. sē receptum tuērētur: <i>he</i> | 5. <i>Adverb.</i> |
| (the king) <i>might receive and</i> | 6. <i>pity.</i> |
| <i>guard him.</i> | 7. <i>ruling.</i> |
| 3. <i>made good.</i> | 8. <i>in point of time.</i> |

illōrum temporum historiam reliquērunt, et eiusdem
cīvitātis fuit. Is autem ait ad Artaxerxēn eum vēnisse
atque hīs verbīs epistolam mīsisse: "Themistoclēs vēnī
ad tē, quī plūrima mala omnium Grāiōrum¹ in domum²
5 tuam intulī, quam³ diū mihi necesse fuit adversum patrem
tuum bellāre patriamque meam dēfendere. Īdem multō
plūra bona fēcī, postquam in tūtō ipse⁴ et ille in periculō
esse coepit. Nam cum in Asiam revertī vellet, proeliō
apud Salamīna factō litterīs eum certiōrem fēcī id agī
10 ut pōns, quem in Hellēspontō fēcerat, dissolverētur atque
ab hostibus circumīrētur;⁵ quō nūntiō ille periculō est
liberātus. Nunc autem cōnfūgī ad tē exagitātus ā cūctā
Graeciā, tuam petēns amīcitiam: quam sī erō adeptus,⁶
nōn minus mē bonum amīcum habēbis quam fortem
15 inimīcum ille expertus est. Tē autem rogō, ut dē iīs
rēbus, quās tēcum colloquī volō, annum⁷ mihi tempus
dēs eoque trānsactō ad tē venīre patiāris."

Themistocles is well received in Persia by the king. He dies there.

10. Huius rēx animī magnitūdinem admīrāns cupi-
ēnsque tālem virum sibi conciliārī veniam dedit. Ille
20 omne illud tempus litterīs sermōnīque⁸ Persārum sē
dēdidit; quibus adeō ērudītus est ut multō commodius
dicātur apud rēgem verba fēcisse quam iī poterant quī in
Perside erant nātī. Hic cum multa rēgī esset pollicitus
grātissimumque⁹ illud, sī suis ūtī cōnsiliīs vellet, illum

historia, -ae, f., *history*.

trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, *drive through, finish*.

venia, -ae, f., *indulgence, permission*.

ērudīō, 4, *instruct*.

1. Partit. gen. with quī.

2. *house, line*.

3. *quam diū: as long as*.

4. Sc. esse coepī.

5. Sc. ipse.

6. = nactus.

7. *annuum tempus: a year's time*.

8. *spoken language*.

9. *grātissimum illud: and as the most welcome the following, that*.

Graeciam bellō oppressūrum, magnīs mūneribus ab Artaxerxe dōnātus, in Asiam¹ rediit domiciliumque Magnēsiae sibi cōstituit. Namque hanc urbem eī rēx dōnārat, hīs² quidem verbīs, quae³ eī pānem praeberet
 5 (ex quā regiōne quinquāgēna talenta quotannis redibant⁴); Lampsacum autem, unde vīnum sūmeret; Myunta, ex quā obsōnium habēret.

Huius ad nostram memoriam monumenta mānsērunt duo; sepulcrum prope oppidum, in quō est sepultus,
 10 statua in forō Magnēsiae. Dē cuius morte multis modis apud plērōsque scriptum est, sed nōs eundem potissimum Thūcŷdidem auctōrem probāmus, quī illum ait Magnēsiae morbo⁵ mortuum neque negat fuisse fāmam, venēnum suā sponte sūmpsisse, cum sē, quae rēgi dē
 15 Graeciā opprimendā pollicitus esset, praestāre posse dēspērāret. Īdem ossa eius clam in Atticā ab amicis sepulta,⁶ quoniam lēgibus nōn concēderētur, quod prōditiōnis esset damnātus, memoriae prōdidit.

III. CIMON

? - 449

Cimon is delivered from prison by his sister.

1. CĪMŌN, Miltiadis filius, Athēniēnsis, dūrō admodum⁷ initiō ūsus⁸ est adulēscēntiae. Nam cum pater

quinquāgēnus, -a, -um, *fifty each.*

obsōnium, -ī, n., *food, fish.*

monumentum, -ī, n., *memorial, monument.*

sepeliō, -īre, sepelīvī (-īī), sepul-
tum, *bury.*

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

1. Sc. minōrem.

2. hīs verbīs: *on just these terms.*

3. = ut ea: make corresponding changes in unde and ex quā.

4. *were returned (in taxes).*

5. *disease.*

6. Sc. esse.

7. *very.*

8. ūsus est: *experienced.*

eius litem ¹ aestimātam ² populō solve nōn potuisset ob eamque causam in vinclis pūblicis dēcessisset,³ Cīmōn eādē custodiā tenēbātur neque lēgibus Athēniēnsium ēmitti poterat, nisi pecūniam, quā pater multātus erat, 5 solvisset. Habēbat autem in mātirimōniō sorōrem germānam suam, nōmine Elpinicē, nōn magis amōre quam mōre ductus: namque Athēniēnsibus licet eōdem patre nātās uxōrēs dūcere.⁴ Huius ⁵ coniugiī cupidus Calliās quīdam, nōn tam generōsus ⁶ quam pecūniōsus, quī mag- 10 nās pecūniās ex metallis fēcerat, ēgit cum Cīmōne ut eam sibi uxōrem daret: id sī impetrāsset, sē prō illō pecūniam solūtūrum. Is cum ⁷ tālem condiōnem āspērārētur, Elpinicē negāvit sē passūram Miltiadis prōgeniem in vinclis pūblicis interīre, quoniam prohi- 15 bēre posset, sēque Calliae nūptūram, sī ea quae pollicērētur praestitisset.

He becomes famous as a statesman and general.

2. Tālī modō custodiā liberātus Cīmōn celeriter ad prīncipātum pervēnit. Habēbat enim satis ēloquentiae, summam liberālītatem, magnam prūdētiā cum iūris 20 cīvilis tum rei mīlitāris, quod cum patre ā puerō ⁸ in exercitibus fuerat ⁹ versātus. Itaque hīc et populum ur-

germānus, -a, -um, *own*; here used with sorōrem for *half sister*.

coniugium, -ī, n., *marriage*.

pecūniōsus, -a, -um, *moneyed, wealthy*.

āspernor, I, *scorn*.

prōgeniēs, acc. -em, abl. -ē, f., *descendant*.

ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence*.

cīvilis, -e, *civil*.

urbānus, -a, -um, *of the city*.

1. *fine*.

2. *imposed*.

3. = mortuus est.

4. *marry*.

5. *with her*.

6. = nōbilis.

7. Concessive.

8. ā puerō: *from boyhood*.

9. fuerat versātus: fuī and fueram are often used by Nepos to form the perf. and pluperf. tenses.

bānum in suā tenuit potestāte et apud exercitum plūrimum valuit auctōritāte. Primum imperātor apud flūmen Strȳmona magnās cōpiās Thrācum fugāvit, oppidum Amphipolim cōstituit, eōque decem mīlia Athēniēnsium
 5 in colōniam mīsīt. Idem iterum apud Mycalēn, Cypriōrum et Phoenīcum ducentārum nāvium classem dēvictam¹ cēpit eōdemque diē parī fortunā in terrā ūsus est. Namque, hostium nāvibus captīs, statim ex classe cōpiās suās ēdūxit barbarōrumque maximam vim ūnō concursū
 10 prōstrāvit.² Quā victōriā magnā praedā potitus, cum domum reverterētur, quod iam nōnnūllae īnsulae propter acerbītatem imperiī dēfēceraut, bene animātās cōfirmāvit, aliēnātās ad officium redire coēgit. Scȳrum, quam eō tempore Dolopes incolēbant, quod contumācius sē
 15 gesserant, vacuēfēcīt, sessōrēs veterēs urbe īnsulāque ēiēcīt, agrōs cīvibus dīvīsīt. Thasiōs opulentīā frētōs³ suō adventū frēgit. Hīs ex manubiīs⁴ arx Athēnārum, quā ad merīdiem vergit, est ōrnāta.

He is banished, recalled, restores peace, dies.

3. Quibus rēbus cum⁵ ūnus in cīvitate maximē
 20 flōrēret, incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater suus cēterīque Athēniēnsium principēs: nam testārum suffrāgiīs, quod⁶ illi ὀστρακισμόν vocant, decem annōrum exsilīō multātus est.⁷ Cuius factī celerius Athēniēnsēs

acerbītās, acerbītātis, f., *severity*.
 animātus, -a, -um, *disposed*.
 aliēnātus, -a, -um, *estranged*.
 contumāciter, *with insubordination*.

vacuēfaciō; cf. vacuus + faciō.
 sessor, sessōris, m., *inhabitant*.
 opulentia, -ae, f., *wealth*.
 testa, -ae; cf. testula.
 exsilium, -ī, n., *exile*.

1. dēvictam cēpit = dēvicit et cēpit.

2. *vanquished*.

3. *relying on*.

4. *spoils*.

5. *Causal*.

6. *(a proceeding) which*.

7. *was punished*.

quam ipsum **paenituit**.¹ Nam cum ille animō fortī invidiae² ingrātōrum civium cessisset bellumque Lacedaemoniī Athēniēnsibus indīxissent, cōnfēstim nōtae eius virtūtis dēsīderium cōsecūtum est. Itaque post³ annum quintum quam expulsus erat, in patriam revocātus est. Ille, quod hospitio Lacedaemoniōrum utēbatur, satius⁴ exīstimāns concēdere quam armīs contendere, Lacedaemonem suā sponte est profectus pācemque inter duās potentissimās civitātēs conciliāvit.⁵ Post,⁶ neque ita multō, Cyprum cum ducentis nāvibus imperātor missus, cum eius maiōrem partem īnsulae dēvīcisset, in⁷ morbum implicitus in oppidō Citiō est mortuus.

His generosity.

4. Hunc Athēniēnsēs nōn solum in bellō sed etiam in pāce diū dēsīderāvērunt. Fuit enim tantā liberālitate, cum complūribus locīs praedia hortōsque habēret, ut⁸ numquam in iīs custōdem imposuerit fructūs servandī grātiā,⁹ nē quis impedirētur quō¹⁰ minus eis rēbus, quibus¹¹ quisque vellet fruerētur. Semper eum pedisequi

paenitet, -ēre, paenituit, impersonal, *repent*.

ingrātus, -a, -um, *ungrateful*.

nōtus, -a, -um, *well-known*.

dēsīderium, -ī, n., *loss, need*.

dēsīderō, ī, *regret, need*.

praedium, -ī, n., *farm*.

hortus, -ī, m., *garden*.

fruor, -ī, fructus sum, *delight in, enjoy*.

pedisequus, -ī, m., *footman, attendant*.

1. Takes acc. of person and gen. of the cause of the feeling.

2. Indir. obj. of cessisset.

3. post . . . quam: *five years after*.

4. *better*.

5. *arranged*.

6. post . . . multō: *later, but not much so*.

7. in morbum implicitus: *seized by illness*.

8. Translate this word before the cum concessive clause.

9. = causā.

10. quō minus fruerētur: *from enjoying*.

11. Abl. with fruī, understood with vellet.

cum nummīs¹ sunt secūtī, ut, sī quis opis² eius indigēret, habēret, quod statim daret, nē differendō³ vidērētur negāre. Saepe, cum aliquem offēnsū⁴ fortuitō
 5 Cotidiē sic cēna⁵ eī coquēbātur, ut, quōs invocātōs vidisset in forō, omnēs dēvocāret: quod facere nūllō diē praetermittēbat. Nūllī fidēs⁶ eius, nūllī opera, nūllī rēs familiāris dēfuit: multōs locuplētāvit,⁷ complūrēs pauperēs mortuōs, quī unde⁸ efferrentur nōn relīquis-
 10 sent, suō sūmptū extulit. Sic⁹ sē gerendō minimē est mīrandum sī et vīta eius fuit sēcūra et mors acerba.¹⁰

IV. EPAMINONDAS

C. 418-362

Differences between the customs of the Greeks and the Romans.

1. EPAMINONDĀS, Polymnidis filius, Thēbānus. Dē hōc priusquam scribimus, haec praecipiēda videntur lēctōribus, nē¹¹ aliēnōs mōrēs ad suōs referant, nēve ea,

indigeō, -ēre, -diguī, —, *need.*fortuitō, *by chance.*amiculum, -ī, n., *mantle.*coquō, -ere, coxī, coctum, *cook.*invocātus, -a, -um; cf. in (*not*) + vocō.forum, -ī, n., *forum.*

dēvocō, 1; cf. vocō.

praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *let pass, omit.*pauper, pauperis, *poor.*sēcūrus, -a, -um, *free from care.*acerbus, -a, -um, *bitter.*lēctor, lēctōris, m., *reader.*1. *pieces of money.*2. *aid.*3. *by putting him off.*4. *found.*5. *dinner.*6. *protection.*7. *enriched.*8. *unde efferrentur: with which**they might be buried.*9. *sic sē gerendō = cum sē gereret.*10. *i.e. to his fellow citizens.*11. *nē . . . referant: that they shall not refer the customs of others to their own (as a standard).*

quae ipsīs ¹ leviōra ² sunt, parī modō apud cēterōs fuisse ³ arbitrentur. Scīmus enim ⁴ mūsicēn nostrīs mōribus abesse ⁵ ā prīncipis persōnā, saltāre ⁶ vērō etiam in vitīis pōnī; quae omnia apud Graecōs et grāta et laude digna
 5 dūcuntur. Cum autem exprimere ⁷ imāginem cōsuētūdinis atque vītāe velimus Epaminōndae, nihil vidēmur ⁸ dēbere praetermittere quod pertineat ad ⁹ eam dēclārandam. Quārē dicēmus prīmum dē genere eius; deinde quibus disciplinīs et ā quibus sit ērudītus; tum dē mōri-
 10 bus ingeniūque ¹⁰ facultātibus et sī ¹¹ qua alia memoriā digna erunt; postrēmō dē rēbus gestīs, quae ā plūrimīs animī antepōnuntur virtūtibus.

The education of Epaminondas.

2. Nātus igitur patre, quō diximus, genere honestō, pauper iam ā maiōribus relictus est, ērudītus autem sic,
 15 ut nēmō Thēbānus magis. Nam et citharīzāre et cantāre ad chordārum sonum doctus est ā Dionysiō, quī nōn minōre fuit in mūsicīs glōriā quam Dāmōn aut

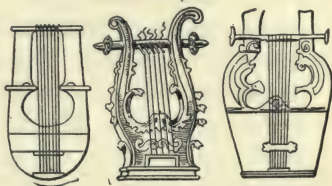
mūsica, -ae, and mūsicē, acc.
 -ēn, f., *music* (including *poetry*).
 persōna, -ae, f., *mask, part, character*.
 saltō, 1, *dance*.
 dignus, -a, -um, *worthy*.
 ingenium, -ī, n., *talent*.
 antepōnō; cf. pōnō.

igitur, *therefore, then*.
 citharīzō, -āre, —, —, *play on the lyre*.
 cantō, 1, *sing, play*.
 chorda, -ae, f., *string*.
 mūsicus, -a, -um, *musical*; masc. as subst., *musician*; neut. as subst., *music*.

1. *in their own eyes.*
2. *quite trivial.*
3. Sc. *levia.*
4. *for example.*
5. *is inconsistent with.*
6. Trans. as a participial noun, the subject of pōnī.
7. exprimere imāginem: *to*

- write a sketch.*
8. vidēmur dēbere: *it seems that we ought.*
 9. ad eam dēclārandam: *to make it clear.*
 10. ingeniī facultātibus: *native ability.*
 11. sī qua: *whatever.*

Lamprus, quōrum pervulgāta sunt nōmina, cantāre tibiis ab Olympiodōrō, saltāre ā Calliphrone. At philosophiae praeceptōrem habuit Lysim Tarentinum, Pŷthagorēum; cui quidem sic fuit dēditus¹ ut adulēscēns¹
 5 tristem ac sevērū senem omnibus aequālibus suis in familiāritate anteposuerit; neque prius eum ā sē dimisit quam in doctrinīs tantō
 10 antecessit condiscipulōs, ut facile intellegī posset parī modō superātūrum omnēs in cēteris artibus. Atque haec ad nostram cōsuētūdinem sunt levīa et potius contemnenda; at in Graeciā, uti-
 15 que² ōlim, magnae laudī erant. Postquam ephēbus est factus et palaestrae dare operam coepit, nōn tam magnitudinī vīriū servivit³ quam vēlōcitātī; illam enim ad āthlētārum ūsum, hanc ad bellī existimābat utilitatem pertinēre. Itaque exercēbātur⁴ plūrimum currendō et
 20 luctandō ad eum finem, quoad⁵ stāns complectī posset atque contendere. In armīs vērō plūrimum studiī cōsumēbat.



Citharae

pervulgātus, -a, -um, *well-known*.

tibia, -ae, f., *flute*.

philosophia, -ae, f., *philosophy*.

praeceptor, praeceptōris, m., *teacher*.

sevērus, -a, -um, *stern*.

aequālis, -e, *equal*.

familiāritās, familiāritātis, f., *intimacy*.

doctrīna, -ae, f., *study, wisdom*.

condiscipulus, -ī, m., *fellow student*.

ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.

ephēbus, -ī, m., *youth*.

palaestra, -ae, f., *wrestling*.

āthlēta, -ae, m., *athlete*.

currō, -ere cucurrī, cursum, *run*.

luctor, i, *wrestle*.

1. Concessive.

2. utique ōlim: *formerly at any rate*.

3. labored for.

4. he used to train himself.

5. quoad . . . contendere: *until he could grapple and struggle while standing*.

His characteristics.

3. Ad hanc corporis firmitatem plura etiam animi bona accesserant.¹ Erat enim modestus, prudens, gravis, temporibus² sapienter utens, peritus belli, fortis manu, animo maximò, adeò veritatis diligens ut ne iocus
5 quidem mentiretur. Idem continens,³ clemens patiensque admirandum in modum, non solum populi sed etiam amicorum ferens iniurias, in primis commissa celans, quod interdum non minus prodest⁴ quam disertè dicere, studiosus audiendi; ex hoc enim facillimè disci⁵ arbitrabatur.
10 Itaque cum in circulum venisset in quo aut de re publica disputaretur⁶ aut de philosophia sermone haberetur, numquam inde prius discessit quam ad finem sermone esset adductus. Paupertatem adeò facile perpressus⁷ est, ut de re publica nihil praeter gloriam cuperet.
15 Amicorum in⁸ se tuendo caruit⁹ facultatibus,¹⁰ fidè ad alios sublevandos saepe sic usus est, ut iudicari possit omnia ei¹¹ cum amicis fuisse communia. Nam cum aut civium suorum aliquis ab hostibus esset captus,

modestus, -a, -um, *modest*.
 prudens, prudentis, *shrewd*.
 sapienter, *wisely*.
 veritas, veritatis, f., *truth*.
 diligō, -ere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *be fond of*.
 iocus, -i, m., *jest*.

mentior, 4, *lie*.
 clemens, clementis, *kind*.
 admirandus, -a, -um; cf. admiror.
 commissum, -i, n., *something intrusted, secret*.
 disertè, *clearly*.
 circulus, -i, m., *circle, group*.

1. were added.
2. chances.
3. self-controlled.
4. is useful.
5. that one learned.
6. a question was being discussed.

7. suffered.
8. in se tuendō: in protecting himself.
9. he did without.
10. = opibus.
11. ei cum amicis: between his friends and himself.

aut virgō amīcī nūbilis, quae propter paupertātem collo-
cārī¹ nōn posset, amīcōrum cōnsilium habēbat et, quan-
tum quisque daret, prō facultātibus imperābat. Eam-
que summam² cum confēcerat, priusquam acciperet
5 pecūniā, addūcēbat eum quī quaerēbat ad eōs quī
cōferēbant, eīque ut ipsī numerārent faciēbat ut ille
ad quem ea perveniēbat scīret quantum cuique dē-
bēret.

His incorruptibility.

4. Tentāta autem eius est abstinētia ā Diomedonte
10 Cyzicēnō; namque is, rogātū Artaxerxis rēgis, Epamīnōn-
dam pecūniā corrumpendum³ suscēperat. Hīc magnō
cum pondere aurī Thēbās vēnit et Mīcythum adulēscen-
tulum quīnque talentis ad suam perdūxit voluntātem,
quem tum Epamīnōndās plūrimum dīligēbat. Mīcythus
15 Epamīnōndam convēnit et causam adventūs Diomedontis
ostendit. At ille Diomedonte cōram:⁴ “nihil,” inquit,
“opus pecūniā est; nam sī rēx ea vult quae Thēbānīs
sunt ūtilia, grātiis facere sum parātus, sīn autem con-
trāria, nōn habet aurī atque argentī satis. Namque
20 orbis terrārum dīvitiās accipere nōlō prō patriae cāritāte.
Tū quod mē incōgnitum tentāstī tuīque similem exīsti-
māstī, nōn mīror tibi que īgnōscō; sed ēgrederere properē,
nē aliōs corrumpās, cum mē nōn potueris. Et tū, Mīcy-

nūbilis, -e, *marriageable*.

paupertās, paupertātis, f.; cf.

pauper.

numerō, I, *count out*.

tentō, I, *test*.

abstinētia, -ae, f., *self-restraint*.

rogātū, only in abl., m., *by re-quest*.

aurum, -ī, n., *gold*.

grātiis, *for nothing*.

cāritās, cāritātis, f., *love*.

properē, *in a hurry*.

1. *be given in marriage*.

2. *amount*.

3. *bribe*; the gerundive con-

struction with **Epamīnōndam**.

4. *in the presence of*; a post-
positive prep. with the abl. case.

the, argentum huic redde, aut, nisi id cōnfēstim facis, ego tē trādam magistrātui." Hunc Diomedōn cum rogāret ut tūtō exīret suaque quae attulerat licēret efferre; "istud quidem," inquit, "faciam, neque¹ tuā
 5 causā, sed meā, nē, sī tibi² sit pecūnia adēpta, aliquis dicat id ad mē ēreptum³ pervēnisse, quod dēlātum⁴ accipere nōluissem." Ā quō cum quaesisset quō sē dēdūcī⁵ vellet, et ille Athēnās dixisset, praesidium dedit, ut tūtō pervenīret. Neque vērō id satis habuit, sed
 10 etiam, ut inviolātus in nāvem ēscenderet, per Chabriam Athēniēnsem, dē quō suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, effēcit. Abstinētia erit hoc satis testimōnium. Plūrima quidem prōferre possumus, sed modus adhibendus est, quoniam ūnō hōc volūmine vītam excellentium virōrum complū-
 15 rium conclūdere cōstituimus, quōrum⁶ sēparātīm multīs mīlibus⁷ versuum complūrēs scrīptōrēs ante nōs explicā-
 runt.⁸

His ready repartee and his eloquence.

5. Fuit etiam disertus, ut nēmō eī Thēbānus pār esset ēloquentiā, neque minus concinnus in brevitate respon-
 20 dendī quam in perpetuā⁹ ōrātiōne ōrnātus. Habuit obtrēctātōrem Meneclidēn quendam, indidem Thēbīs, et

inviolātus, -a, -um, *unharmēd*.
 volūmen, volūminis, n., *book*.
 conclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, *include*.
 versus, -ūs, m., *line*.
 scrīptor, scrīptōris, m., *writer*.
 disertus, -a, -um, *fluent*.

concinnus, -a, -um, *well adjusted, concise*.
 ōrnātus, -a, -um, *elegant*.
 obtrēctātōr, obtrēctātōris, m., *disparager, rival*.
 indidem, *from the same place, likewise*.

1. neque tuā causā: *but not for your sake*.

2. Dat. of separation.

3. *by seizure*.

4. *when offered*.

5. *be escorted*.

6. Sc. vītam.

7. Abl. of means.

8. *described*.

9. *set*.

adversarium in administrandā rē publicā, satis exercitatum in dīcendō, ut¹ Thēbānum scilicet; namque illī gentī plūs inest virium quam ingenīi. Is, quod in rē militārī flōrere Epaminōndam vidēbat, hortārī solēbat Thēbānōs
 5 ut pācem bellō anteferrent, nē illius imperātōris opera dēsiderārētur. Huic ille: “fallis,” inquit, “verbō² cīvēs tuōs, quod hōs ā bellō āvocās; ōtiī enim nōmine servitūtem conciliās. Nam paritur³ pāx bellō. Itaque quī eā diūtina⁴ volunt frui, bellō exercitātī esse dēbent.
 10 Quārē sī prīncipēs Graeciae vultis esse, castrīs est vōbīs ūtendum, nōn palaestrā.” Īdem ille Meneclīdēs cum huic obiceret insolentiam, quod sibi Agamemnonis bellī glōriam vidērētur cōsecūtus, at ille “quod,” inquit, “autem mē Agamemnonem aemulārī putās, falleris;
 15 namque ille cum ūniversā⁵ Graeciā vix decem annīs ūnam cēpit urbem; ego, contrā⁶ ea, ūnā urbe nostrā diēque ūnō tōtam Graeciam Lacedaemoniīs fugātīs liberāvī.”

Further evidence of his readiness.

6. Īdem⁷ cum in conventum vēnisset Arcadum, petēns
 20 ut societātem cum Thēbānīs et Argivīs facerent, contrāque⁸

insum; cf. sum.

āvocō, 1; cf. vocō.

ōtium, -ī, n., inactivity, peace.

insolentia, -ae, f., haughtiness, arrogance.

aemulor, 1, rival.

1. ut Thēbānum scilicet: *that is, for a Theban.*

2. by means of that word (i.e. pācem).

3. is brought about.

4. long.

5. ūniversā Graeciā: *with all Greece united.*

6. contrā... nostrā: *on the*

other hand with this one city of ours.

7. Īdem cum, etc.; the main verb of the sentence is dīxit, line 11, page 198. The subject is repeated in Epaminōndās, l. 9, page 198.

8. -que, connects vēnisset and postulāret.

Callistratus, Athēniēnsium lēgātus, quī ēloquentiā omnēs
 eō praestābat tempore, postulāret ut potius amicitiam se-
 querentur Atticōrum, et in ōrātiōne suā multa invectus
 esset in Thēbānōs et Argīvōs, in¹ iisque hoc posuisset,
 5 animadvertere dēbere² Arcades quālēs utraque civitās
 civēs prōcreāsset, ex quibus dē cēteris possent iudicāre;
 Argīvōs enim fuisse² Orestem et Alcmaeonem mātricidās,
 Thēbīs Oedipum nātum esse,² quī patrem suum interfēcis-
 set; huic in respondendō Epamīnōndās, cum dē cēteris
 10 perōrāsset, postquam ad illa duo opprobria pervēnit, ad-
 mīrārī sē dīxit stultitiā³ rhētoris Atticī, quī nōn ani-
 madverterit, innocentēs illōs nātōs⁴ domī, scelere admissō
 cum patriā essent expulsī, receptōs esse ab Athēniēnsi-
 bus. Sed maximē eius ēloquentia ēlūxit Spartaē lēgātī⁵
 15 ante pugnam Leuctricam. Quō cum omnium sociōrum
 convēnissent lēgātī, cōram frequentissimō lēgātiōnum con-
 ventū sīc Lacedaemoniōrum tyrannidem coarguit, ut nōn
 minus illā ōrātiōne opēs eōrum concusserit quam Leuc-
 tricā pugnā. Tum enim perfēcit, quod post appāruit, ut
 20 auxiliō Lacedaemoniī sociōrum prīvārentur.

invehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum, *carry against*; in pass. with reflexive force, *make an attack*.

prōcreō, I, *produce*.

mātricida, -ae, m., *one who murders his mother, matricide*.

perōrō, I, *finish*.

opprobrium, -ī, n., *reproach*.

rhētor, rhētoris, m., *orator*;

(implying contempt) *talker, speechifier*.

ēlūceō, -ēre, -lūxī, —, *shine out, be conspicuous*.

coarguō, -ere, -arguī, -argūtum, *prove, expose*.

concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *disturb, crush*.

appāreō, -ēre, -pāruī, -pāritum, *appear*.

1. in iis hoc posuisset: *had inserted among these attacks this statement*.

2. Depend on verb of say-

ing implied in in . . . posuisset.

3. *stupidity*.

4. Sc. *esse*.

5. Appositive with *eius*.

His patience under criticism. He retains his command beyond the legal time limit.

7. Fuisse¹ patientem suorumque iniuriās ferentem civium, quod sē patriae irāscī nefās esse dūceret, haec sunt testimōnia. Cum eum propter invidiam civēs suī praeficere exercituī nōluissent, duxque esset dēlēctus bellī
 5 imperitus, cuius errōre eō esset dēducta illa multitudō militum ut omnēs dē salūte pertimēscerent, quod locōrum angustiiis clausi ab hostibus obsidēbantur, 'dēsiderārī coepta est Epaminōndae diligentia; erat enim ibi prīvātus numerō² militis. Ā quō cum peterent opem, nūllam ad-
 10 hibuit memoriam contumēliae et exercitum obsidiōne liberātum domum redūxit incolumem. Nec vērō hoc semel fēcīt, sed saepius. Maximē autem fuit illūstre,³ cum in Peloponnēsum exercitum dūxisset adversus Lacedaemoniōs habēretque collēgās duōs, quōrum alter
 15 erat Pelopidās, vir fortis ac strēnuus. Hī cum crīminibus adversārīōrum omnēs in invidiam vēnissent, ob eamque rem imperium iis⁴ esset abrogātum, atque in eōrum locum alii praetōrēs successissent, Epaminōndās populī scītō nōn pārui, idemque ut facerent persuāsīt collēgīs, et bel-
 20 lum quod suscēperat gessit. Namque animadvertēbat, nisi id fēcisset, tōtum exercitum propter praetōrum imprudentiam inscītiamque bellī peritūrum. Lēx erat Thēbis quae morte multābat, sī⁵ quis imperium diūtius

irāscor, -ī, irātus sum, *be angry.*

nefās, indecl., n., *sin.*

pertimēscō, -ere, -timuī, —; cf. timeō.

strēnuus, -a, -um, *active.*

abrogō, 1, *take away.*

scītum, -ī, n., *decree.*

imprudentia, -ae, f.; cf. in (*not*) + prūdentia.

inscītia, -ae, f.; cf. in (*not*) + sciō.

1. Sc. Epaminōndam as subject.

2. *with the rank.*

3. *famous.*

4. Dat. of separation.

5. sī quis: *whoever.*

retinuisset, quam lēge praefīnītum foret.¹ Hanc Epaminōndās, cum rei pūblīcae cōservandae causā lātā² vidēret, ad perniciem civitātis cōferre³ nōluit et quattuor mēnsibus diūtius, quam populus iusserat, gessit imperium.

He ingeniously defends his act and escapes the penalty.

5 8. Postquam domum reditum est, collēgae eius hōc crimine accūsābantur. Quibus ille permīsit, ut omnem causam in sē trānsferrent, suāque operā⁴ factum contenderent ut lēgī nōn oboedirent. Quā dēfēnsiōne illis periculō liberātis, nēmō Epaminōndam respōnsūrum⁵
 10 putābat, quod quid diceret nōn habēret. At ille in iūdicium vēnit, nihil eōrum negāvit quae adversariī crimini⁶ dabant, omniaque quae collēgae dixerant cōfessus est, neque recūsāvit quō minus lēgis poenam subīret, sed ūnum ab iīs petivit ut in sepulcrō suō in-
 15 scriberent: "Epaminōndās ā Thēbānis morte multātus est, quod eōs coēgit apud Leuctra superāre Lacedaemoniōs, quōs ante⁷ sē imperātōrem nēmō Boeotiōrum ausus sit aspicere in aciē, quodque ūnō proeliō nōn solum Thēbās ab interitū retrāxit, sed etiam ūniversam Grae-
 20 ciam in⁸ libertātem vindicāvit, eoque⁹ rēs utrōrumque perdūxit ut Thēbānī Spartam oppugnārent, Lacedaemoniī satis habērent, sī salvī esse possent, neque prius bellāre dēstitit quam Messēnē restitūtā urbem eōrum

praefīniō, 4, *prescribe*.

oboediō, 4, *obey*.

īnscribō; cf. scribō.

aspiciō, -ere, -spēxi, -spectum;

cf. perspiciō.

salvus, -a, -um, *safe*.

1. = esset.

2. Sc. esse: *had been passed*.

3. *apply*.

4. *instrumentality*.

5. *offer a defense*.

6. *as a charge*.

7. ante sē imperātōrem: *before he was general*.

8. in libertātem vindicāvit: *set free*.

9. eō . . . perdūxit: *so managed the fortunes of both*.

obsidiōne clausit." Haec cum dīxisset, rīsus omnium cum hilaritāte coortus est, neque quisquam iūdex ausus est dē eō ferre suffrāgium. Sic ā iūdicio¹ capitis maximā discessit glōriā.

His death.

5 9. Hīc extrēmō² tempore imperātor apud Mantinēam, cum aciē instrūctā audācius instāret hostibus, cōgnitus ā Lacedaemoniīs, quod in ūnūs³ perniciē eius patriae sitam⁴ putābant salūtem, ūniversī in⁵ ūnum impetum fēcērunt, neque prius abscessērunt quam magnā caede
10 factā, multisque occīsīs, fortissimē ipsum Epaminōndam pugnātem, sparō ēminus percutsum,⁶ concidere vidērunt. Huius cāsū aliquantum retardātī sunt Boeōtiī, neque tamen prius pugnā excessērunt quam repugnantēs⁷ prōfligārunt. At Epaminōndās, cum animadverteret
15 mortiferum sē vulnus accēpisse, simulque sī ferrum, quod ex hastilī in corpore remānserat, extrāxisset, animam statim ēmissūrum,⁸ usque⁹ eō retinuit,¹⁰ quoad renūntiātum est vīcisse Boeōtiōs. Id postquam audīvit, "satis," inquit, "vīxī; invictus enim morior." Tum ferrō
20 extractō cōnfestim exanimātus est.

rīsus, -ūs, m., *laughter*.

hilaritās, hilaritātis, f., *gayety*.

iūdex, iūdicis, m., *judge*.

abscēdō; cf. cēdō.

sparus, -ī, m., *small spear*.

ēminus, *from a distance*.

aliquantum, *somewhat*.

retardō, I, *keep back*.

mortiferus, -a, -um; cf. mors + ferō.

hastile, hastilis, m., *spear shaft*.

extrahō; cf. trahō.

1. iūdicio capitis: *trial for his life*.

2. extrēmō tempore: *at last*.

3. ūnūs eius: *of this one man*.

4. depended on.

5. in ūnum: sc. Epaminōndam.

6. pierced.

7. opponents.

8. Depends on animadverteret; sc. sē as subject.

9. usque eō quoad: *even to the time when*.

10. Sc. ferrum.

Anecdotes. The decline of Thebes after his death.

10. Hic uxōrem numquam dūxit. In¹ quō cum reprehenderētur (quod liberōs nōn relinqueret) ā Pelopidā, quī filium habēbat infāmem, maleque² eum in³ eō patriae cōsulere dīceret,⁴ “vidē,” inquit, “nē tū
5 peius cōsulās, quī tālem ex tē nātum relictūrus sīs. Neque vērō stirps potest mihi deesse; namque ex⁵ mē nātam relinquo pugnam Leutricam, quae nōn modo mihi superstes, sed etiam immortālis sit necesse est.” Quō⁶ tempore, duce Pelopidā, exsulēs Thēbās occupārent
10 et praesidium Lacedaemoniōrum ex arce expulērunt, Epamīnōndās, quamdiū⁷ facta est caedēs cīvium, domō sē tenuit quod neque malōs⁸ dēfendere volēbat neque impugnāre, nē manūs suōrum⁹ sanguine cruentāret; namque omnem cīvilem¹⁰ victōriam fūnestam putābat.
15 Idem, postquam apud Cadmēam cum Lacedaemoniīs pugnārī coeptum est, in¹¹ primīs stetit.

Huius dē virtūtibus vitāque satis erit dictum, sī hoc ūnum adiūnxerō, quod nēmō ibit infitiās, Thēbās¹² et ante Epamīnōndam nātum et post eiusdem interitum
20 perpetuō¹³ aliēnō pāruiſſe imperiō; contrā ea, quam diū

infāmis, -e, *disreputable*.

stirps, stirpis, f., *stock, progeny*.

superstes, superstitis, *surviving*.

exsul, exsulis, m., *exile*.

cruentō, i, *stain*.

fūnestus, -a, -um, *fatal, disastrous*.

infitiās, acc. only; with ire, *deny*.

1. in quō: *on this point*.

2. male cōsulere: *had no proper regard for*.

3. in eō: *in this matter*.

4. Sc. Pelopidās as subject.

5. ex mē nātam: *as my daughter*.

6. quō tempore: *at the time when*.

7. quamdiū: *as long as*.

8. traitors.

9. of his fellow citizens.

10. over his fellow citizens.

11. in primīs: *among the first*.

12. Subject of pāruiſſe and fuisse.

13. Adverb.

ille praefuerit rei pūblicaē, caput fuisse tōtius Graeciae. Ex quō intellegī potest ūnum hominem plūris¹ quam cīvitātem fuisse.

V. HANNIBAL

247-183

Hannibal's greatness as a general. His hatred of the Romans.

1. HANNIBAL, Hamilcaris filius, Karthāginiēnsis. Si
5 vērū est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus
omnēs gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum
Hannibalem tantō praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prū-
dentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitūdine
cūctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque cum eō² con-
10 gressus est in Italiā, semper discessit superior. Quod³
nisi domī cīvium suōrum invidiā dēbilitātus esset, Rō-
mānōs vidētur superāre potuisse.⁴ Sed multōrum ob-
trēctātiō dēvicit ūnius virtūtem.

Hīc autem velut⁵ hērēditāte relictum odium paternum
15 ergā Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit, ut prius animam quam id⁶
dēposuerit; quī quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et
aliēnārū opum indigēret,⁷ numquam dēstiterit animō
bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

infītor, 1, *deny.*

quotiēscumque, *as often as.*

dēbilitō, 1, *weaken.*

obtrēctātiō, obtrēctātiōnis, f.,
jealousy.

odium, -ī, n., *hatred, grudge, ani-*
mosity.

paternus, -a, -um, *of a father;*
here, his father's.

ergā, *towards.*

1. *of more consequence.*

2. *i.e. populō Rōmānō.*

3. *quod nisi: unless then.*

4. *would have been able.*

5. *velut hērēditāte: by inher-*
itance, as it were.

6. *i.e. odium.*

7. *needed.*

His vow.

2. Nam ut ¹ omittam Philippum, quem absēns hostem reddidit Rōmānīs, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rēx Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditatē incendit ²

5

10



Sacrificium

bellandī, ut usque ā rubrō marī arma cōnātus sit inferre Ītalīae. Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntātē explōrārent darentque ³ operam cōsiliīs clandestinīs, ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī ⁴ addūcerent, tamquam ab ipsīs corruptus alia ⁵ atque antea sentīret, neque id frūstrā fēcissent, idque

Hannibal comperisset sēque ab interiōribus cōsiliīs sē-
15 gregārī vīdisset, tempore ⁶ datō adiit ad rēgem, eīque cum multa dē fidē suā et odiō in Rōmānōs commemorāset, hoc adiūnxit. “Pater meus,” inquit, “Hamilcar, puerulō mē, utpote nōn amplius novem annōs nātō, ⁷ in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Karthāgine, Iovī optimō
20 maximō hostiās immolāvit. Quae divīna rēs dum cōficiēbātur, quaesivit ā mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpīsem atque ab eō petere ⁸ coepīsem nē dubitāret dūcere, tum ille, ‘faciam,’ inquit,

ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red*.

clandestinus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret*.

tamquam, *as if*.

sēgregō, I, *separate, exclude*.

puerulus, -ī, m., *little boy*.

utpote, *namely, as being*.

hostia, -ae, f., *victim*.

1. ut omittam: *to omit*.

2. Sc. Hannibal as subject.

3. darent operam: *try*.

4. in the king's eyes.

5. alia atque antea sentiret:

felt differently than before.

6. chance.

7. Agrees with mē.

8. petere nē dubitāret: *beg him not to hesitate*.

‘sī mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.’ Simul mē ad
 āram addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre instituerat, eamque
 cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in
 amicitia cum Rōmānīs fore. Id ego iūsiūrandum patri
 5 datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī, ut nēmini
 dubium esse dēbeat, quīn reliquō tempore eādem mente
 sim futūrus. Quārē sī quid amicē dē Rōmānīs cōgitābis,
 nōn imprūdentē fēceris sī mē¹ cēlāris; cum quidem
 bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis sī nōn mē in eō
 10 prīncipem posueris.”

His campaign in Spain, and his advance over the Alps into Italy.

3. Hāc igitur quā dīximus aetāte cum patre in His-
 pāniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale
 imperātōre suffectō, equitātū omnī praefuit. Hōc
 quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiī ad eum
 15 dētulit. Id² Karthāginem dēlātum pūblicē comprobātum
 est. Sic Hannibal minor quīnque et vīgintī annīs nātus
 imperātor factus proximō trienniō omnēs gentēs His-
 pāniae bellō subēgit;³ Saguntum, foederātam civitātem,
 vī expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex
 20 hīs ūnum in Āfricam mīsīt, alterum cum Hasdrubale
 frātre in Hispāniā reliquit, tertium in Ītaliā sēcum
 dūxit. Saltum⁴ Pŷrēnaeum trānsiit. Quācumque iter
 fēcīt, cum omnibus incolīs cōflīxit; nēminem nisi vīctum

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.

sacrificō, 1, *sacrifice*.

amicē, adv.; cf. *amicus*.

imprūdentē; cf. in (*not*) + prū-
 dentia.

frūstror, 1, *deceive, disappoint, trick*.

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *ap-
 point instead*.

comprobō, 1, *approve*.

triennium, -ī, n.; cf. trēs + annus.

foederātus, -a, -um, *allied*.

quīcumque, quaecumque, quod-
 cumque, *whoever, whatever*.

1. *from me*.

2. *i.e.* his appointment.

3. *subdued*.

4. *mountain range*.

dīmīsīt. Ad Alpēs postēaquam vēnit, quae Ītaliā ab Galliā sēiungunt, quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum praeter Herculem Grāium trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibere trānsitū concīdit, loca patefēcīt, itinera mūniit,¹ effēcīt ut eā² elephantus ōrnātus³ ire posset, quā antea ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere. Hāc cōpiās trādūxit in Ītaliāque pervēnit.

His victories in Italy.

4. Cōflīxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō
 10 Scīpiōne cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidiū⁴ apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Tertiō idem Scīpiō cum collēgā Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum vēnit. Cum iis manum cōseruit; utrōsque prōflīgāvit. Inde per Ligurēs
 15 Appennīnum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravī morbō adfcitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valētūdine cum etiam-tum premerētur lecticāque ferrētur, C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasumennum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circum-
 20 ventum occīdit, neque multō post C. Centēnium prae-tōrem cum dēlectā manū saltūs occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliam pervēnit. Ibi obviam⁵ eī vēnērunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum cōnsulem occīdit et

sēiungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctum,
separate.
 trānsitus, -ūs; cf. eō.
 rēpō, -ere, rēpsī, rēptum, *creep.*

cōnserō, -ere, -seruī, -sertum, *join;*
 with *manum*, *join battle.*
 lectica, -ae, f., *couch, sedan.*

1. *built.*
 2. eā . . . quā: *there . . .*
where.

3. *with its load.*
 4. *Locative.*
 5. *to meet.*

aliquot¹ praetereā cōsulārēs, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, quī superiōre annō fuerat cōsul.

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.

5. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus est nullō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam revertētur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō eī sē obiēcit. Hīc clausus locōrum angustīs, noctū sine ūllō detrīmentō exercitūs² sē expedit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dedit³ verba. Namque obductā⁴ nocte sarmenta⁵ in cornibus iuencōrum dēligāta incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispālātā immisit. Quō repentinō obiectō vīsū, tantum terrōrem iniēcit⁶ exercituī Rōmānōrum ut ēgredī extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rūfū, magistrum equitū parī ac⁷ dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in⁸ Lūcānīs absēns⁹ in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquiēs cōsulem, apud Venusiam parī modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia ēnumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc ūnum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegī possit quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in

iuencus, -ī, m., *bullock*.
dispālor, I, *wander about*.
vīsus, -ūs, m., *sight*.

magister, magistrī, m., *master, commander*.
quīnquiēs, *five times*.

1. *several*.
2. Objective gen. with detrīmentō.
3. dedit verba: *deceived*.
4. obductā nocte: *under the cover of night*.
5. *twigs*.

6. Sc. Hannibal as subject.
7. ac dictātōrem: *to that of dictator*.
8. in Lūcānīs modifies sustulit.
9. though not in command personally.

Italiā fuit, nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem pugnam in campō¹ castra posuit.

He retires from Italy and is defeated by Scipio at Zama.

6. Hinc invictus patriam dēfēsum² revocātus bellum gessit adversus P. Scīpiōnem, filium eius Scīpiōnis, quem ipse primō apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertiō apud Trebiam fugārat. Cum hoc exhaustis³ iam patriae facultātibus cupivit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō valentior postea congredērētur. In colloquium convēnit, condiōnēs nōn convēnērunt.⁴ Post id factum paucis diēbus apud Zamam cum eōdem cōflīxit; pulsus (incrēdibile dictū) bīduō et duābus noctibus Hadrūmētum pervēnit, quod abest ab Zamā circiter mīlia passuum trecenta. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, insidiātī sunt eī; quōs nōn solum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Hadrūmētī reliquōs ē fugā collēgit; novīs dēlēctibus paucis diēbus multōs contrāxit.

As chief magistrate, he manages home affairs well, but finally flees to Antiochus.

7. Cum in apparandō ācerimē esset occupātus, Karthāginiēnsēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercituī postea praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit itemque Māgō frāter eius usque ad⁵ P. Sulpicium C. Aurēlium cōsulēs. Hīs⁶ enim magistrātibus lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vērērunt, quī senātui populōque

impraesentiārum, *for the present.*
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum,
settle, end.

insidior, 1, *lie in wait for.*
dēlēctus, -ūs, m.; cf. dēligō.
apparō, 1, *prepare.*

1. *field.*

2. *Supine.*

3. *drained.*

4. *were agreed upon.*

5. *to the time of.*

6. *hīs magistrātibus: abl. abs.*

Rōmānō grātiās agerent, quod cum iīs pācem fēcissent, ob eamque rem corōnā aureā¹ eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis² essent captīvique redderentur. Hīs ex senātūs cōsultō respōnsum est:
 5 mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captīvōs nōn remissūrōs, quod³ Hannibalem, cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nōminī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātre eius Māgōnem.
 10 Hōc respōnsō Karthāginiēnsēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocārunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vicēsīmō; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sīc Karthāgine quotannis annuī binī rēgēs creābantur. In eō magi-
 15 strātū parī diligentiā sē Hannibal prae-buit, ac⁴ fuerat in bellō. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectigālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs ex⁵ foedere penderētur, sed etiam supereset, quae in aerāriō repōnerētur. Deinde, M. Claudiō L. Fūriō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī
 20 Karthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus suī expōscendī grātiā missōs, priusquam iīs senātus⁶ darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam⁷ factā Poenī nāvēs duās, quae eum comprehenderent, sī possent cōsequī, mīsērunt;
 25 bona eius pūblicārunt, domum ā fundāmentīs disiēcērunt, ipsum exsulem iūdicārunt.

foedus, foederis, n., *treaty*.

aerārium, -ī, n., *treasury*.

repōnō; cf. pōnō.

pūblicō, i, *confiscate*.

fundāmentum, -ī, n., *foundation, groundwork*.

1. *golden*.

2. *at Fregellae*.

3. *quod Hannibalem, etc.: because they even then kept Hannibal . . . in command of*

the army.

4. *as*.

5. *in accordance with*.

6. *hearing before the senate*.

7. *palam factā = nūntiātā*.

He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans.

8. At Hannibal annō quārtō, postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornēliō Q. Minuciō cōsulibus, cum quīque nāvibus Āfricam accessit in finibus Cŷrēnaeōrum, si¹ forte Karthāginiēnsēs ad bellum Antiochī² spē fidūciāque
 5 indūcerentur,³ cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Ītaliā proficīscerētur. Hūc Māgōnem frātre excivit. Id ubi Poenī rescivērunt, Māgōnem eādem, quā frātre, absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illi⁴ dēspērātis rēbus cum solvissent nāvēs ac vēla ventis dedissent, Hannibal
 10 ad Antiochum pervēnit. Dē Māgōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque aliī naufragiō,⁵ aliī ā servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum⁶ reliquērunt. Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius⁷ pārēre voluisset quam⁸ in suscipiendō instituerat, pro-
 15 pius Tiberī⁹ quam Thermopylis dē summā imperiī dimicāset. Quem¹⁰ etsi multa stultē¹¹ cōnārī vidēbat,¹² tamen nullā dēseruit¹² in rē. Praefuit paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiā dūcere, iisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphŷliō marī cōflīxit.
 20 Quō cum¹³ multitūdine adversāriōrum suī¹⁴ superārentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

excieō (or exciō), -ēre (-īre), -cīvī vēlum, -ī, n., sail.

(-ii), -cītum (-cītum), call out, servulus, -ī, m., a little slave, summon. slave.

1. (to see) if.

2. Antiochī . . . fidūciāque: because of the faith and hope (they had) in Antiochus.

3. they could be drawn into.

4. i.e. Hannibal and Mago.

5. Cf. nāvis + frangō.

6. scriptum reliquērunt: have left a record to the effect that.

7. i.e. Hannibalis.

8. quam . . . instituerat: as he had done in beginning it.

9. Dat. with propius.

10. i.e. Antiochus.

11. foolishly.

12. Sc. Hannibal as subject.

13. Concessive.

14. his forces.

He goes to Crete and there saves his money by a ruse.

9. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dēderētur, quod sine
dubiō accidisset sī¹ suī fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad
Gortyniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōferret cōsiderāret.
Vidit autem vir omnium
5 callidissimus in magnō
sē fore periculō, nisi²
quid prōvidisset, propter
avāritiam Crētēnsium;
magnam enim sēcū
10 pecūniā portābat, dē
quā sciēbat exisse fā-
mam. Itaque capit tāle
cōsiliū. Amphorās complūrēs complet plumbō,³
summās⁴ operit aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus
15 principibus, dēpōnit in templō Diānae, simulāns sē suās
fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis,
statuās aēneās, quās sēcū portābat, omnī suā pecūniā
complet eāsque in prōpatulō domi abicit.⁵ Gortynii
templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā cēteris quam
20 ab Hannibale, nē ille, inscientibus iis, tolleret sēcūque
dūceret.



Amphorae

cōsiderō, 1, *look at carefully, consider.*

amphora, -ae, f., *a two-handled jar.*

operiō, -īre, -peruī, -pertum, *cover.*

aēneus, -a, -um, *bronze.*

prōpatulum, -ī, n., *courtyard.*

1. sī . . . potestātem: *if he had given them a chance at him.*

2. nisi . . . prōvidisset: *unless he should take some precaution.*

3. lead.

4. Sc. amphorās: *the tops of the jars.*

5. As though they were of no value.

He goes to Prusias. Invents a novel piece of stratagem.

10. Sic cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūsis Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Ītaliā, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus
 5 Rōmānōs. Quem cum vidēret domesticis opibus minus¹ esse rōbustum, conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adiungēbat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidēbat ab eō² Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amicissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerēbātur et mari et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum
 10 Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobique Eumenēs plūs valēbat propter Rōmānōrum societātem: quem sī remōvisset, facilitōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus erant³ dēcrētūrī. Superābātur nāvium multitūdine;
 15 dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit quam plūrimās venēnātās serpentēs vivās colligī eāsque in vāsa fictilia conici. Hārum cum effēcisset magnam multitūdinem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiāriōs convocat iisque praecipit, omnēs ut
 20 in ūnam Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis⁴ habeant sē dēfendere. Id illōs facile serpentium multitūdine cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve

illūdō, -ere, -lūsī, -lūsum, *deceive*.

rōbustus, -a, -um, *powerful*.

dissidēō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sēssum, *differ*.

utrobique, *on both sides; here, on land and sea*.

venēnātus, -a, -um, *filled with poison, poisonous*.

serpēns, serpentis, f., *snake*.

vās, vāsis, n., plu. vāsa, vāsōrum, *jar*.

fictilis, -e, *earthen*.

1. *not very*.

2. *i.e.* Prusias.

3. *erant dēcrētūrī: they were*

going to fight.

4. *satis habeant: should consider it enough*.

veherētur ut¹ scirent sē factūrum ; quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iīs pollicētur praemiō fore.

By this strategy, he defeats Eumenes.

II. Tālī cohortātiōne militum factā classis ab utrīsque in proelium dēducitur. Quārum aciē cōstitutā, prius-
 5 quam sīgnum pugnae darētur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quō locō Eumenēs esset, tabellārium in scaphā² cum cādūceō mittit. Quī ubi ad nāvēs adversāriōrum pervēnit epistulamque ostendēns sē rēgem professus³ est
 10 quaerere, statim ad Eumenem dēductus est, quod nēmō dubitābat quīn aliquid dē pāce esset scriptum. Tabellārius dūcis nāve dēclārātā suis,⁴ eōdem unde erat ēgressus sē recēpit. At Eumenēs solūtā⁵ epistolā nihil in eā repperit,
 15 nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinērent. Cuius etsī causam mirābātur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nōn dubitāvit. Hōrum in concursū Bithŷniī Hannibalis praeceptō⁶ ūniversī nāvem Eumenis adoriuntur. Quōrum vim rēx cum sustinēre
 20 nōn posset, fugā salūtem petiit ; quam⁷ cōsecūtus nōn esset, nisi intrā sua praesidia sē recēpisset, quae in proximō lītore erant collocāta. Reliquae Pergamēnae nāvēs cum adversāriōs premerent ācrius, repente in eās vāsa fictilia, dē quibus suprā mentiōnem fēcimus, conicī coepta



Caduceus

tabellārius, -ī, m., messenger, herald.

cādūceus, -ī, m., herald's staff, the token of a peace envoy.

1. ut . . . factūrum: he would see to it that they should know.

2. small boat.

3. professus est: stated.

4. to his own men.

5. opened.

6. in accordance with the command.

7. quam . . . esset: he would not have reached safety.

sunt. Quae¹ iacta initiō rīsum pugnantibus concitārent, neque quārē id fieret poterat intellegī. Postquam autem nāvēs suas opplētās cōspēxērunt serpentibus, novā rē perterriti cum quid² potissimum vitārent nōn vidērent, 5 puppēs vertērunt sēque ad sua castra nautica rettulērunt. Sic Hannibal cōsiliō arma Pergamēnōrum superāvit, neque tum solum, sed saepe aliās pedestribus cōpiis parī prūdentiā pepulit adversāriōs.

His death by poison.

12. Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit cāsū ut lēgātī
10 Prūsiae Rōmae apud³ T. Quintium Flāmininum cōsulārem cēnārent, atque ibi dē Hannibale mentiōne factā ex iis ūnus dīceret eum in Prūsiae rēgnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāmininus senātui dētulit. Patrēs⁴ cōscripti, quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futūrōs existi-
15 marent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam mīsērunt, in iis Flāmininum, quī ab rēge peterent nē⁵ inimicissimum suum sēcum habēret sibi quē⁶ dēderet.⁷ His Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud⁸ recūsāvit, nē id ā sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus iūs hospitii esset; ipsi, sī possent, com-
20 prehenderent;⁹ locum ubi esset facile inventūrōs. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat in castellō, quod ei ā rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in

nauticus, -a, -um, naval.

cēnō, 1, dine.

1. quae iacta: the throwing enemy with him.
of these.

6. -que: but.

2. quid . . . vitārent: what they should avoid most.

7. Sc. ut.

3. at the house of.

8. illud recūsāvit nē, etc.: but he did object to this that

4. patrēs cōscripti: senators.

they, etc.

5. nē . . . habēret: that he should not keep their greatest

9. Subjunctive representing imperative of direct discourse.

omnibus partibus aedificiī exitūs hābēret, scilicet¹ verēns
 nē² ūsū venīret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmā-
 nōrum vēnissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedis-
 sent, puer ab iānuā prōspiciēns Hannibalī dīxit plūrēs
 5 praeter cōsuētūdinem armātōs appārere.³ Quī imperā-
 vit eī ut omnēs forēs aedificiī circumīret, ac properē⁴
 sibi nūntiāret num⁵ eōdem modō undique obsidērētur.
 Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiāset omnēsque
 exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō
 10 factum, sed sē petī neque⁶ sibi diūtius vītā esse reti-
 nendam. Quam⁷ nē aliēnō arbitriō dīmitteret, memor
 pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum,⁸ quod semper sēcum ha-
 bere cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

His historians and his own writings.

13. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfūctus
 15 labōribus, annō adquiēvit septuāgēsīmō. Quibus⁹ cōn-
 sulibus interierit, nōn¹⁰ convenit. Namque Atticus M.
 Claudiō Mārcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mor-
 tuum¹¹ in annālī suō scriptum reliquit, at Polybius L.
 Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem
 20 Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethēgō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque¹²

iānuā, -ae, f., door.

foris, foris, f., door.

memor, memoris, *mindful*.

perfungor, -ī, -fūctus sum, *per-*

form.

adquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum,

go to rest, die.

annālis, annālis, m., *record*.

1. *evidently*.

2. nē . . . venīret: *lest that*
should happen.

3. *appeared.*

4. = *celeriter*.

5. *whether*.

6. neque retinendam: *could*
not be preserved.

7. *i.e. vītā.*

8. *poison.*

9. quibus . . . interierit: *in-*
direct question.

10. nōn convenit: *it is not*
agreed.

11. mortuum (esse): *sc.*
eum; depends on scriptum reli-
quit.

12. *and yet.*

- hic tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus nōnnihil temporis tribuit litteris. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt, Graecō sermōne cōfectī, in iis ad¹ Rhodiōs dē² Cn. Manlii Vulsōnis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Huius³ bellī⁴ gesta
 5 multī memoriae prōdidērunt, sed ex his duo⁵ quī cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vīxērunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Silēnus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsilō Hannibal litterārum Graecārum ūsus est doctōre.
- 10 Sed nōs⁶ tempus est huius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperātōrēs, quō facilius collātis utrōrumque⁷ factis, quī virī praeferendī sint, possit iūdicārī.

VI. CATO

234-149

Cato's life up to his consulship.

1. M. CATO, ortus mūnicipiō Tusculō, adulēscntulus, priusquam honōribus operam daret, versātus est⁸ in Sabīnīs, quod ibi hērēdium ā patre relictum habēbat. Inde
 15 hortātū⁹ L. Valeriū Flaccī, quem in cōsulātū cēnsūrāque habuit collēgam, ut M. Perpenna cēnsōrius nārrāre

dīstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strīctum,
draw apart, engage.

liber, librī, m., *book.*

doctor, doctōris, m.; cf. doceō.

mūnicipium, -ī, n., *a free town,*
i.e. with its own laws.

adulēscntulus, -ī, m., *a very young man.*

hērēdium, -ī, n., *an inherited estate.*

cēnsūra, -ae, f., *censorship.*

cēnsōrius, -ī, m., *ex-censor.*

1. ad Rhodiōs: *i.e. liber ad Rhodiōs.*

2. Governs rēbus gestis.

3. *i.e. Hannibal.*

4. bellī gesta: *deeds of war.*

5. Sc. sunt.

6. nōs facere finem: *for me to make an end.*

7. *i.e. Roman and Greek generals.*

8. versātus est = vīxit.

9. *at the suggestion.*

solitus est, Rōmam dēmigrāvit in forōque esse coepit. Primum stīpendium¹ meruit annōrum decem septemque. Q. Fabiō M. Claudiō cōsulibus tribūnus militum in Siciliā fuit. Inde ut rediit, castra secūtus est C. Claudi
 5 Nerōnis, magnīque opera eius exīstimāta est in proeliō apud Sēnam, quō cecidit Hasdrubal, frāter Hannibalis. Quaestor obtigit P. Āfricānō cōsulī, cum quō nōn prō² sortis necessitudīne vīxit; namque ab eō perpetuā dis-sēnsit vītā. Aedīlis plēbī³ factus est cum C. Helviō.
 10 Praetor prōvinciam obtinuit Sardiniam, ex quā quaestor superiōre tempore ex Āfricā dēcēdēns Q. Ennium poētā dēdūxerat, quod nōn minōris aestimāmus quam quemlibet amplissimum Sardiniēsem triumphum.

His consulship and censorship. His sternness.

2. Cōsulātum gessit cum L. Valeriō Flaccō; sorte
 15 prōvinciam nactus Hispāniam citeriōrem, exque eā triumphum dēportāvit. Ibi cum diūtius morārētur, P. Scīpiō Āfricānus cōsul iterum, cuius in priōrī cōsulātū quaestor fuerat, voluit eum dē prōvinciā dēpellere et ipse eī succēdere, neque hoc per senātum efficere potuit,
 20 cum⁴ quidem Scīpiō prīncipātum in cīvitatē obtinēret, quod tum nōn potentiā,⁵ sed iūre rēs pūblica administrābātur. Quā ex rē irātus senātuī, cōsulātū perāctō prīvātus in urbe mānsit. At Catō, cēnsor cum eōdem Flaccō factus, sevērē praefuit eī potestātī. Nam et in

obtingō, -ere, -tigī, —, *fall to the lot of.*

aedīlis, aedīlis, m., *aedile.*

poēta, -ae, m., *poet.*

quīlibet, quaelibet, quidlibet *any.*

sevērē, *strictly, with sternness, rigorously.*

1. stīpendium meruit: *served of this assignment.*
a campaign.

2. prō sortis necessitudīne: *in accordance with the usual terms*

3. Genitive.

4. Concessive.

5. *personal influence.*

complūrēs nōbilēs animadvertit, et multās rēs novās in
 ēdictum¹ addidit, quā rē lūxuria reprimeretur, quae iam
 tum incipiēbat pullulāre. Circiter annōs octōgintā, us-
 que ad extrēmam aetātem ab adulēscientiā, rei pūblīcae
 5 causā suscipere inimicitias nōn dēstitit. Ā multīs tentā-
 tus² nōn modo nūllum dētrimentum exīstimātiōnis³
 fēcit,⁴ sed, quoad vīxit, virtūtum laude crēvit.

His versatility. His writings.

3. In omnibus rēbus singulārī fuit industriā ; nam et
 agricola sollers et perītus iūris cōsultus et magnus im-
 10 perātor et probābilis ōrātor et cupidissimus litterārū
 fuit. Quārū studium etsī senior arripuerat,⁵ tamen
 tantum prōgressum fēcit ut nōn facile reperīri possit,
 neque dē Graecīs neque dē Ītalicīs rēbus, quod eī fuerit
 incōgnitum. Ab adulēscientiā cōnfēcit ōrātiōnēs. Senex
 15 historiās scribere instituit. Eārū sunt librī septem.
 Primus continet rēs gestās rēgū populī Rōmānī, se-
 cundus et tertius unde quaeque cīvītās orta sit Ītalica,
 ob quam rem omnēs Originēs vidētur appellāsse. In
 quārtō autem bellum Poenicum est prīmum, in quīntō
 20 secundum ; atque haec omnia capitulātīm sunt dicta.
 Reliqua quoque bella parī modō persecūtus est usque ad
 praetūrā Servi Galbae, quī diripuit Lūsitanōs ; atque
 hōrū bellōrū dūcēs nōn nōmināvit, sed sine nōmini-
 bus rēs notāvit.⁶ In iisdem exposuit quae in Īaliā
 25 Hispāniisque aut fierent aut vidērentur admīranda ; in

pullulō, *i*, increase.
 agricola, -ae, *m.*, farmer.
 sollers, sollertis, *expert*.

iūris cōsultus, -ī, *m.*, lawyer.
 probābilis, -e, *pleasing*.
 capitulātīm, *briefly*.

1. *proclamation*.
2. *attacked*.
3. *reputation*.

4. *sustained*.
5. *had taken up*.
6. *set down*.

quibus multa industria et diligentia compāret,¹ nūlla doctrīna.

Huius dē vitā et mōribus plūra in eō librō persecūtī sumus, quem sēparātīm dē eō fēcimus rogātū T. Pom-
5 pōnī Atticī. Quārē studiōsōs² Catōnis ad illud volūmen dēlēgāmus.

1. *are found.*

2. *those interested.*

WORD FORMATION

Many Latin words are made up from other words :

- A. By appending certain endings ;
- B. By joining one word to another.

A. BY APPENDING CERTAIN ENDINGS

1. Nouns derived from verb stems by adding :

- a. **-tor** (**-sor**), denoting *agency* ; as **vic** (**vincō**, *conquer*) + **-tor** (denoting *agent*) = **victor**, *one who conquers, conqueror*.
- b. **-tiō** (**-siō**) and **-tus** (**-sus**), gen. **-ūs**, denoting *an action going on* ; as, **profec** (**proficīscor**, *start out*) + **-tiō** (denoting *action*) = **profectiō**, *a starting out, departure* ; and as, **adven** (**adveniō**, *approach*) + **-tus** (denoting *action*) = **adventus**, *coming, arrival*.

2. Nouns derived from nouns and adjectives by adding :

- ia**, **-itia**, **-tās**, **-tūs**, **-tūdō**, denoting *abstract quality* ; as,
audāc (**audāx**, *bold*) + **-ia** (denoting *quality*) = **audācia**, *boldness*.
amīc (**amīcus**, *friendly*) + **-itia** (denoting *quality*) = **amīcitia**, *friendship*.
līber (**līber**, *free*) + **-tās** (denoting *quality*) = **lībertās**, *freedom*.
vir (**vir**, *man*) + **-tūs** (denoting *quality*) = **virtūs**, *manliness, courage*.
magn(i) (**magnus**, *great*) + **-tūdō** (denoting *quality*) = **magnitūdō**, *greatness*.

B. BY JOINING ONE WORD WITH ANOTHER

1. Words with prefixes which have a meaning of their own :

- ā**, **ab**, **abs**, *away, from* ; as, **ā-mittō**, *send away*.
- ad** (**ac**, **ā**, **ap**, **at**), *to, toward, at, on, near* ; as, **ad-dūcō**, *lead toward*.
- ante**, *before* ; as, **ante-ferō**, *carry before, prefer*.
- circum**, *around* ; as, **circum-dūcō**, *lead or carry around*.

cum (com, con, col, co), *together, with*; as, com-portō, *bring together*: completely, thoroughly; as, com-moveō, *move thoroughly*.

dē, *from*; as, dē-cēdō, *go away from*.

ē, ex (ef), *out from, forth*: as, ē-dūcō, *lead forth*: completely; as, ef-ficiō, *do completely*.

in (im, ir, il), *in, into, at, on, against*; as, in-colō, *live in*; in-ferō, *bring against*.

inter, *between*; as, inter-pōnō, *put between*.

ob (o, obs, oc, of, og, op), *against*; as, oc-currō, *run against*.

per, *through*; as, per-dūcō, *lead through*: thoroughly; as, per-terreō, *frighten thoroughly*.

prae, *in front of*; as, prae-ficiō, *place at the head of*.

prō (prōd), *forth, before*; as, prō-cēdō, *go forth*.

sub (su, subs, suc, suf, sup), *under, down*; as, sub-eō, *go under*.

trāns (trān, trā), *across*; as, trā-dūcō, *lead across*.

2. Words with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:
dis (dī, dif, dir), *apart, between*; as, dī-mittō, *send apart*.

red (re), *back, again*; as, re-mittō, *send back*.

3. Nouns and adjectives with prefixes which have not an independent meaning:

in, not, un-: as, in-crēdibilis, *unbelievable*.

Frequentative or Intensive Verbs denote repeated or earnest action. They are formed by adding -tō (-sō) to supine stems; as, iac (iacio, *throw*) + -to (denoting *repetition*) = iactō, *throw often*.

Ha p p e a n ,
v a l a p i
P a v

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

- A., abb. for *Aulus*, a Roman given name.
- Acarnāna, -ae, f., a woman of Acarnania.
- Acarnānia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
- Achāia, -ae, f., a Roman province in Greece.
- Achillās, -ae, m., one of Pompey's murderers.
- Adbucillus, -ī, m., an Allobrogian.
- Admētus, -ī, m., a king of the Molossians in Epirus.
- Aduatuca, -ae, f., a stronghold of the Eburones.
- Aduatucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul, originally German.
- Aeginium, -nī, n., a stronghold in Epirus.
- Aegyptius, -a, -um, *Egyptian*.
- Aegyptus, -ī, f., *Egypt*, a country in northern Africa.
- Aemilius, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. See **Paulus**. 2. *Lucius Aemilius*, an officer in Caesar's cavalry.
- Aeolis, Aeolidis, f., a country in Asia Minor.
- Aetōlia, -ae, f., a province of Greece.
- Afrānius, -nī, m., a lieutenant of Pompey.
- Āfrica, -ae, f., the continent of *Africa*.
- Āfricānus, -ī, m., a title.
- Agamemnōn, Agamemnonis, m., a king of Mycenae.
- Alcmaeōn, Alcmaeonis, m., a Greek.
- Alesia, -ae, f., a town in eastern Gaul.
- Alexandriā, -ae, f., *Alexandria*, the capital of Egypt.
- Allobrox, Allobrogis, m., generally plu., *the Allobroges*, a tribe of south-eastern Gaul.
- Alpēs, Alpium, f., *the Alps*, mountains in Europe.
- Alpicī, -ōrum, m., inhabitants of the Alps.
- Ambarri, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul, clients of the Haedui.
- Ambiāni, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
- Ambibariī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
- Ambiorīx, Ambiorīgis, m., a king of the Eburones.
- Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
- Amphipolis, Amphipolis, f., a city in Thrace.
- Ampius, -pī, m., *Titus Ampius*, a follower of Pompey.
- Anartēs, Anartium, m., a German tribe.
- Andebrogis, -gī, m., an ambassador of the Remi.

- Andēs, Andium, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
 Androsthēnēs, Androsthēnis, m., a governor of Thessaly.
 Antiochēnsēs, -ium, m., inhabitants of Antioch.
 Antiochia, -ae, f., the capital of Syria.
 Antiochus, -ī, m., a king of Syria.
 Antistius, -tī, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Antōnius, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Marcus Antonius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2. *Gaius Antonius*, brother of the above.
 Apollō, -inis, m., god of prophecy.
 Apollōnia, -ae, f., a city in Macedonia.
 Apollōniātēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Appollonia.
 Appenninus, -ī, m., *the Apennines*, mountains in Italy.
 Apsus, -ī, m., a river of Macedonia.
 Āpulia, -ae, f., a country in southeastern Italy.
 Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.
 Aquītānia, -ae, f., a country in southwestern Gaul.
 Aquītānus, -a, -um, *Aquitanian*; generally plu., *the Aquitanians*.
 Arar, Araris, m., a river of eastern Gaul; the modern *Saône*.
 Arcas, Arcadis, *Arcadian*.
 Aremoricus, -a, -um, *Aremoric*, applied to the seacoast states of north-western Gaul.
 Argī, -ōrum (*Argos, -eos*), m., the capital of Argolis, in the Peloponnesus.
 Argīvus, -a, -um, *belonging to Argos*.
 Ariovistus, -ī, m., a king of the Germans.
 Arpinēius, -ēī, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, a follower of Caesar.
 Artaphernēs, -is, m., a commander of the Persians at Marathon.
 Artaxerxēs, -is, m., king of Persia.
 Artemisium, -sī, n., a promontory on the northeastern coast of Euboea.
 Arvernus, -a, -um, *Arvernian*, generally plu., a tribe of central Gaul; rivals of the Haedui.
 Asia, -ae, f. 1. *Asia*, the continent. 2. *Asia Minor*.
 Asiāticus, -a, -um, *Asiatic*.
 Asparāgium, -gī, n., a town in Illyricum.
 Athēnae, -ārum, f., the capital of Attica.
 Athēniēnsis, -is, *Athenian*; generally masc. plu., *the Athenians*.
 Atrebās, Atrebātis, m., *Atrebatian*; generally plu., *the Atrebatians*, a tribe of northern Gaul.
 Attica, -ae, f., a country of Greece.
 Atticus, -a, -um, *belonging to Attica*.
 Atticus, ī, m., *Titus Pomponius Atticus*, friend of Nepos and Cicero.
 Aulercī, -ōrum, m., a strong tribe of central Gaul, divided into four branches.
 Aurēlius, -lī, m., *C. Aurelius Cotta*, a Roman consul.
 Aurunculēius, -ēī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Auscī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.

Avaricum, -ī, n., a stronghold of the Bituriges.

Axona, -ae, m., a river of northern Gaul; the modern *Aisne*.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion.

Baebius, -bī, m., see **Tamphilus**.

Balbus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Lucius Cornelius Balbus*, a friend of Atticus.

Baleāris, -e, *belonging to the Balearic Islands*, off the eastern coast of Spain.

Balventius, -tī, m., *Titus Balventius*, one of Caesar's centurions.

Basilus, -ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Belgae, -ārūm, m., *the Belgians*, a people in northeastern Gaul, occupying one of the three parts into which Gaul was divided.

Belgium, -gī, n., the country of the Belgians in northeastern Gaul.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m., a powerful tribe of Belgians in northern Gaul.

Bibracte, -is, n., a town in eastern Gaul, chief city of the Haedui.

Bibrax, **Bibractis**, f., a town of the Remi in northern Gaul.

Bigerriōnēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Bithŷnia, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.

Bithŷniī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Bithynia.

Biturigēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Blithō, -ōnis, m., *Sulpicius Blitho*, a Roman historian.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Nervii.

Boeōtus, -a, -um, *Boeotian, of Boeotia*, a province of central Greece; generally as a subs., masc. plu., *the Boeotians*.

Boiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in central Gaul; a nomadic people, who fought with the Helvetians against Caesar, and were placed by him among the Haedui.

Brannovicēs, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerci.

Bratuspantium, -tī, n., a town of the Bellovacī in northern Gaul.

Britannī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Britain.

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*.

Brundisium, -sī, n., a town in southeastern Italy.

Brūtus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Junius Brutus*, one of Caesar's officers.

C., abb. for *Gaius* (*Caius*), a Roman given name.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had been presented with Roman citizenship.

Cadmēa, -ae, f., the citadel of Thebes.

Cadŷrcī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

Caemānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

Caerōsī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.

Caesar, **Caesaris**, m., a Roman family name of the Julian gens. *Gaius Julius Caesar*, general, writer, and statesman.

- Calēnus, -ī, m., a Roman family name, see **Fūfius**.
 Caletī, -ōrum (**Caletēs, -um**), m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
 Calliās, -ae, m., an Athenian.
 Calliphrōn, -ōnis, m., a teacher of dancing.
 Callistratus, -ī, m., an Athenian orator.
 Candāvia, -ae, f., a district in Macedonia.
 Canīnius, -nī, m. See **Rebilus**.
 Cannēnsis, -e, *belonging to Cannae*, a town in Apulia.
 Cantabrī, -ōrum, m., a warlike tribe in the north of Spain.
 Cantium, -tī, n., a district in southeastern Britain.
 Canulēius, -ēī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Lucius Canuleius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Capua, -ae, f., a city of Campania.
 Car, Cāris, m., an inhabitant of Caria.
 Cāria, -ae, f., a country in Asia Minor.
 Carnutēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
 Cassiānus, -a, -um, *of Cassius*.
 Cassius, -sī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul, B.C. 107; killed in battle with the Tigurini.
 Casticus, -ī, m., a prominent Sequanian.
 Catamantāloedis, -is, m., a chieftain of the Sequanians.
 Catō, Catōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Cato*, the censor.
 Caturīgēs, -um, m., a tribe of the western Alps.
 Catuvolcus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Eburones.
 Cavillōnum, -ī, n., a town of the Haedui.
 Celtae, -ārum, m., the people in central Gaul, occupying the largest of the three divisions of Gaul.
 Cēnomanī, -ōrum, m., a branch of the Aulerici.
 Centēnius, -nī, m., a Roman general.
 Cethēgus, -ī, m., *Publius Cornelius Cethegus*, consul, B.C. 181.
 Ceutronēs, -um, m. 1. A tribe of the western Alps. 2. A Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
 Chabriās, -ae, m., an Athenian general.
 Chersonēsus, -ī, m., a peninsula of Thrace.
 Cicerō, -ōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. *Quintus Tullius Cicero*, brother of the famous orator; a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Cilicia, -ae, f., a district in southeastern Asia Minor.
 Ciliciēnsis, -e, *Cilician*.
 Cimberius, -rī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi.
 Cimbri, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany; invaded southern Europe, and were defeated by Marius.
 Cīmōn, -ōnis, m. 1. The father of Miltiades. 2. An Athenian general.
 Citium, -tī, n., a town on the coast of Cyprus.
 Clastidium, -dī, n., a stronghold of Cisalpine Gaul.

- Claudius**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman patrician gens. 1. See **Nerō**.
2 & 3. See **Mārcellus**. 4. *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul, B.C. 54.
- Cleopatra**, -ae, f., a queen of Egypt.
- Clōdīus**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman plebeian gens. 1. *Aulus Clodius*, a follower of Caesar. 2. *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, murdered by Milo, B.C. 52.
- Cn.**, abb. for *Gnaeus* (*Cnaeus*), a Roman given name.
- Cocosātēs**, -um, m., a people of Aquitania.
- Colōnae**, -ārum, f., a town in Asia Minor.
- Commīus**, -mī, m., a chieftain of the Atrebrates.
- Condrūsī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.
- Cōnsīdīus**, -dī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Publius Considius*, an officer of Caesar.
- Cōpōnīus**, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Gaius Coponius*, a commander of Pompey's fleet.
- Corcȳra**, -ae, f., an island off Epirus.
- Corcȳraeus**, -a, -um, *Corcyrean*.
- Coriosolitēs**, -um, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
- Cornēlius**, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Lucius Cornelius*, consul, B.C. 193. 2, 3, 4, 5. See **Balbus**, **Cethēgus**, **Lentulus**, **Scīpiō**.
- Cotta**, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family; see **Aurunculēius** and **Aurēlius**.
- Crassus**, -i, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, consul; father both of 2. *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, a quaestor of Caesar; and of 3. *Publius Licinius Crassus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Crāstinus**, -ī, m., a veteran in Caesar's army.
- Crēta**, -ae, f., *Crete*, an island in the Mediterranean.
- Crētēnsēs**, -ium, m., inhabitants of Crete.
- Crētēs**, -um, m., inhabitants of Crete.
- Critognātus**, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.
- Cyclades**, -um, f., group of islands in the Aegean Sea.
- Cyprius**, -a, -um, *of Cyprus, Cyprian*.
- Cyprus**, -ī, f., an island in the eastern Mediterranean.
- Cȳrēnaei**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Cyrene, a city in northern Africa.
- Cyzicēnus**, -a, -um, *of Cyzicus*, a city in Asia Minor.
- D.**, abb. for *Decimus*, a Roman given name.
- Dācī**, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.
- Dāmōn**, -ōnis, m., an Athenian poet and musician.
- Dānuvius**, -vī, m., *the Danube*.
- Dārius**, -rī, m., a king of the Persians.
- Dātis**, **Dātidis**, m., a Persian general.
- Delphī**, -ōrum, m., a town in Phocis.

Dēmētrius, -rī, m., *Demetrius* of Phalereum, a famous Greek orator and statesman.

Diāna, -ae, f., the goddess of hunting.

Diomedōn, -ontis, m., an inhabitant of Cyzicus.

Dionȳsius, -sī, m., a Theban musician.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto*, the god of the lower world.

Dīviciācus, -ī, m. 1. A chieftain of the Haedui, and friend of Caesar.
2. A chieftain of the Suessiones.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.

Dolopes, -um, m., *the Dolopians*, a people of Thessaly.

Domitius, -tī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul, B.C. 54, an officer of Pompey. 2. *Gnaeus Domitius Calvinus*, an officer of Caesar.

Dubīs, -is, m., a river in eastern Gaul, branch of the Arar.

Dumnorīx, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Haedui, brother of Diviciacus.

Dyrrhachīnus, -a, -um, *of Dyrrhachium*.

Dyrrhachium, -chī, n., a town of Illyricum.

Eburōnēs, -um, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.

Eburovīcēs, -um, m., a branch of the Aulerci.

Egus, -ī, m., an Allobrogan.

Eleutetī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.

Ēlis, Ēlidis, f., a city in the Peloponnesus.

Elpinīcē, -ēs, f., half sister of Cimon.

Elusātēs, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Ennius, -nī, m., one of the first Roman poets.

Epamīnōndās, -ae, m., a famous Theban general.

Ephesius, -a, -um, *of Ephesus*.

Ephesus, -ī, f., a town of Ionia in Asia Minor.

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., a country in western Greece.

Eporēdorīx, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Haedui.

Eratosthenēs, -is, m., a Greek geographer.

Eretria, -ae, f., a city in Euboea.

Esuvīi, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northwestern Gaul.

Etrūria, -ae, f., a country on the west coast of Italy.

Euboea, -ae, f., an island off the east coast of Greece.

Eumenēs, -is, m., a king of Pergamum.

Eurōpa, -ae, f., the continent of *Europe*.

Eurybiadēs, -is, m., a Spartan general.

Fabius, -bī, m., the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Quintus Fabius Maximus (Cunctator)*; consul, B.C. 214, opponent of Hannibal. Han. 5.
2. *Quintus Fabius Labeo*, consul, B.C. 183. Han. 13. 3. *Gaius Fabius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. B. G., V. 24.

Falernus, -a, -um, of *Falernus*, a district in Campania.

Flaccus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Lucius Valerius Flaccus*, a patrician and consul with Cato. 2. *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor in Gaul. 3. *Valerius Flaccus*, his son.

Flāminīnus, -ī, m., *Titus Quintius Flamininus*, sent to King Prusias.

Flāminius, -nī, m., *Gaius Flaminius*, consul.

Fleginās, -ātis, m., the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Fleginas*, a knight.

Fregellae, -ārum, f., a city of Latium.

Fūsius, -fī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Fufius Calenus*, a supporter of Caesar.

Fulvius, -vī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Postumus**.

Fūrius, -rī, m., *Lucius Furius*, a consul.

Gabalī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.

Gabīnius, -nī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, a consul.

Gaius; see **C.**, abb.

Galba, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. A king of the Suesiones. 2. *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a praetor. 3. *Publius Sulpicius Galba*, consul, B.C. 200.

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, corresponding in general to France.

Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.

Gallus, -ī, m., a *Gaul*.

Gallus, -ī, m., *Tuticanus Gallus*, one of Caesar's men.

Garumna, -ae, m., a river of southwestern Gaul.

Garumnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Gatēs, **Gatum**, m., a tribe in southwestern Gaul.

Geidumnī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northeastern Gaul.

Geminus, -ī, m., see **Servilius**.

Genava, -ae, f., the city of *Geneva*.

Genusus, -ī, m., a river in western Macedonia.

Gergovia, -ae, f., chief city of the Arverni.

Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.

Germānus, -a, -um, *German*; generally a subs. in plu., *the Germans*.

Germiniī, -ōrum, m., a people on the coast of Epirus.

Gomphēnsis, -e, of *Gomphi*.

Gomphī, -ōrum, m., a town in western Thessaly.

Gortŷnīī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of Gortyna, a city in Crete.

Gracchus, -ī, m., *Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus*, consul.

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.

Graecus, -a, -um, *Greek*.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the western Alps.

Graius, -a, -um, *Grecian*.

Grānius, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Aulus Granus*, a knight.

Grudiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

- Hadrūmētum**, -ī, n., a seacoast town south of Carthage.
- Haeduus**, -a, -um, *Haeduan*; as a subs. **Haeduus**, -ī, m., generally plu., *the Haeduans*, a tribe in central Gaul, allies of Rome.
- Hamilcar**, -aris, m., the father of Hannibal.
- Hannibal**, -alis, m., a famous Carthaginian general.
- Harūdēs**, -um, m., a tribe in southwestern Germany.
- Hasdrubal**, -alis, m. 1. Hamilcar's son-in-law. 2. Brother of Hannibal.
- Hellēspontus**, -ī, m., the strait between Europe and Asia.
- Helvētius**, -a, -um, *Helvetian*; as a subs. **Helvētius**, -ī, m., generally plu., *the Helvetians*, the tribe which occupied what is now Switzerland.
- Helvīi**, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Roman Province.
- Helvius**, -vī, m., a colleague of Cato.
- Hēraclīa**, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
- Herculēs**, -is, m., the national hero of Greece.
- Hercynia** (silva), *the Hercynian forest*, in southern Germany.
- Hibernia**, -ae, f., *Ireland*.
- Hirrus**, -ī, the name of a Roman family. *Gaius Lucilius Hirrus*, a follower of Pompey.
- Hispānia**, -ae, f., *Spain*.
- Hispānus**, -a, -um, *Spanish*.
- Hister**, -trī, m., the river Danube.
- Histiaeus**, -ī, m., tyrant of Miletus.
- Iccius**, -cī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.
- Illyricum**, -ī, n., a Roman province on the east shore of the Adriatic.
- Indutiomārus**, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Treveri.
- Iōnēs**, -um, m., *Ionians*; the Greeks in Asia Minor.
- Iōnia**, -ae, f., part of the western coast of Asia Minor.
- Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.
- Italicus**, -a, -um, *Italian*.
- Iūlius**, -lī, m., *Julius*; the name of a Roman gens. See **Caesar**.
- Iūnius**, -nī, m., *Junius*; the name of a Roman gens. 1. *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard in the service of Caesar. 2. See **Brūtus**.
- Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*, the supreme god of the Romans, king of the gods.
- Iūra**, -ae, m., the Jura mountains, northwest of Helvetia.
- Karthāginiēnsis**, -e, *Carthaginian*.
- Karthāgō**, -inis, f., *Carthage*, a city on the northern coast of Africa.
- L.**, abb. for *Lucius*, a Roman given name.
- Labeō**, -ōnis, m., see **Fabius**.
- Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Titus Atius Labienus*, a faithful lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, but a follower of Pompey in the civil war.

Lacedaemōn, -onis, f., *Sparta*, the chief city of Laconia, in southern Greece.

Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *Spartan*.

Lamprus, -ī, m., a Greek musician.

Lampsacus, -ī, f., a town on the Hellespont.

Lārīsa, -ae, f., a town of Thessaly.

Lārīsaēī, -ōrum, m., the people of Larisa.

Latinus, -a, -um, *Latin*.

Latobrigī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in western Germany.

Lemannus, -ī, m., *Lake Geneva*.

Lēmniī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of the island of Lemnos.

Lēmnus (os), -ī, f., an island in the northern part of the Aegean Sea.

Lemovīcēs, -um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Lentulus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus*, consul, opponent of Caesar. 2. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus*, one of Caesar's quaestors. 3. *Publius Cornelius Lentulus Spinther*, consul, follower of Pompey.

Leōnidās, -ae, m., a king of Sparta.

Leucī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.

Leuctra, -ōrum, n., a town in Boeotia.

Leuctricus, -a, -um, of *Leuctra*.

Levācī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe in northern Gaul.

Lexovīī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in northern Gaul.

Libō, **Libōnis**, m., a Roman family name. *Lucius Scribonius Libo*, a commander in Pompey's fleet.

Ligurēs, -um, m., a tribe on the northwest coast of Italy.

Lingonēs, -um, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.

Liscus, -ī, m., a magistrate of the Haedui.

Lissus, -ī, m., a town in Illyricum.

Longus, -ī, m., *Tiberius Sempronius Longus*, consul.

Lūcānius, -nī, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a centurion.

Lūcānus, -ī, m., *Lucanian*, an inhabitant of Lucania, a province in southwestern Italy.

Lūcīlius, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Hirrus**.

Lūna, -ae, f., *the moon*.

Lūsītānī, -ōrum, m., the inhabitants of modern Portugal.

Lýsis, **Lýsis**, m., a native of Tarentum.

M., abb. for *Marcus*, a Roman given name.

Macedonia, -ae, f., a country of northern Greece.

Magetobriga, -ae, f., a town in central Gaul where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls.

Magnēsia, -ae, f., a city in Lydia.

Māgō, **Māgōnis**, m., Hannibal's brother.

Mandubiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in east central Gaul.

- Manlius**, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Torquātus**, **Vulsō**.
- Mantinēa**, -ae, f., a city of Arcadia, in Greece.
- Marathōn**, -ōnis (acc. -a), f., a plain and a town on the eastern coast of Attica.
- Marathōnius**, -a, -um, of *Marathon*.
- Mārcellīnus**, -ī, m., see **Lentulus**.
- Mārcellus**, -ī, m., *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*. 1. A famous Roman general; defeated Hannibal; conquered Syracuse; consul five times.
2. Consul, B.C. 183.
- Marcomannī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germany.
- Marius**, -rī, m., *Gaius Marius*, a famous Roman general; defeated the Cimbri and Teutoni.
- Mārs**, **Mārtis**, m., god of war.
- Maticō**, -ōnis, m., a town of the Haedui.
- Matrona**, -ae, f., a river in northern Gaul, now the *Marne*.
- Maximus**, -ī, m., see **Fabius**.
- Mediomatricī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
- Menapiī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Belgic Gaul.
- Meneclīdēs**, -is, m., a Theban orator.
- Mercurius**, -rī, m., the god *Mercury*.
- Messāla**, -ae, m., the name of a Roman family. *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul, B.C. 61.
- Messēnē**, -ēs, f., a city of Sicily.
- Mētius**, -tī, m., *Marcus Metius*, a friend of Ariovistus.
- Mētropolis**, -is, f., a city of Thessaly.
- Mētropolitae**, -ārum (-um), m., the inhabitants of Metropolis.
- Mīcythus**, -ī, m., a Theban youth.
- Mīlēsius**, -a, -um, of *Miletus*, a city of Ionia.
- Miltiadēs**, -is, m. 1. A famous Athenian general. 2. Founder of colony in the Chersonesus. Nepos confused the two.
- Minerva**, -ae, f., goddess of war and wisdom.
- Minucius**, -cī, m. 1. *Quintus Minucius*, consul. 2. See **Rūfus**. 3. See **Basilus**.
- Molossī**, -ōrum (-ūm), m., a tribe in Epirus.
- Mona**, -ae, f., an island off the coast of Britain.
- Morinī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgians.
- Mosa**, -ae, m., a river in Belgic Gaul, now the *Meuse*.
- Munātius**, -tī, m., see **Plancus**.
- Mycalē**, -ēs (acc. -ēn), f., a promontory on the coast of Asia Minor.
- Mytilēnae**, -ārum, f., a city on the island of Lesbos.
- Myūs**, **Myuntis**, f., a city of Ionia.
- Nammēius**, -ēī, m., a prominent Helvetian.
- Namnetēs**, -um, a tribe of western Gaul.
- Nantuātēs**, -ium, m., a tribe south of Lake Geneva.

- Nasua**, -ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi; brother of Cimberius.
- Naxus (os)**, -ī, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.
- Nemetēs**, -um, m., a tribe living on the border of Germany and Gaul.
- Neoclēs**, -is (-ī) m., the father of Themistocles.
- Nerō**, -ōnis, m., *Gaius Claudius Nero*, consul, B.C. 207, conquered Hasdrubal.
- Nervicus**, -a, -um, *Nervian*.
- Nervius**, -vī, m., a *Nervian*, one of a tribe living in Belgic Gaul.
- Nitiobrogēs**, -um, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
- Nōrēia**, -ae, f., a town of the Norici.
- Nōricus**, -a, -um, *Norican*; generally masc. plu., *the Norici*, a tribe in modern western Austria.
- Noviodūnum**, -ī, n., a town of the Suessiones in Belgic Gaul.
- Numidae**, -ārum, m., a tribe of barbarians in northern Africa.
- Nymphaeum**, -ī, n., a town in Illyricum.
- Oceanus**, -ī, m., *the ocean*.
- Ocelum**, -ī, n., a town in western Cisalpine Gaul.
- Octōdūrus**, -ī, m., a town of the Veragri in the Alps.
- Oedipus**, -ī (-odis), m., son of the king and queen of Thebes.
- Olympiodōrus**, -ī, m., a musician.
- Orcynia**, -ae, f., the Greek name for *Hercynia*.
- Orestēs**, -is (-ae), m., son of Agamemnon and Clytemnestra.
- Orgetorix**, -igis, m., a chieftain of the Helvetii.
- Ōricum**, -ī, n., a town in Epirus.
- Ōriginēs**, -um, f., the title of a work written by Cato the Censor.
- Osismī**, -orum, m., a tribe in extreme western Gaul.
- P.**, abb. for *Publius*, a Roman given name.
- Padus**, -ī, m., the river *Po* in Italy.
- Palaestē**, -es, f., a town of Epirus.
- Pamphylius**, -a, -um, *Pamphylian*, of *Pamphylia*, a province of Asia Minor.
- Parīsīi**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
- Parius**, -a, -um, of *Paros*; generally masc. plu., *the Parians*.
- Parthī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe southeast of the Caspian Sea, in Asia.
- Parthīnī**, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Greeks in Illyricum.
- Parus (os)**, -ī, f., one of the Cyclades Islands in the Aegean.
- Paulus**, -ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius Paulus*, a Roman consul, killed in the battle of Cannae.
- Pedius**, -dī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
- Pelopidās**, -ae, m., a Theban general.
- Peloponnēsus**, -ī, f., a large peninsula, forming the southern part of Greece.
- Pēlūsium**, -sī, n., a city in Egypt.

- Pergamēnus, -a, -um, of *Pergamum*; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of *Pergamum*.
- Pergamum, -ī, n., a city of Mysia, in Asia Minor.
- Perpenna, -ae, m., a Roman consul, B.C. 92.
- Persae, -ārum, m., the inhabitants of Persis, east of the Persian Gulf.
- Persēs, -ae, m., sing. of *Persae*.
- Persicus, -a, -um, *Persian*.
- Persis, -idis, f., the chief province of the Persian empire.
- Petra, -ae, f., a hill in Illyricum.
- Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.
- Petrosidius, -dī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a standard bearer.
- Phalēreus, -eos (-eī), m., of *Phalerum*, the oldest harbor of Athens, and a city near by.
- Phalēricus, -a, -um, of *Phalerum*.
- Phidippus, -ī, m., an Athenian courier.
- Philippus, -ī, m., a king of Macedonia.
- Phoenicē, -ēs, f., *Phoenicia*, a district on the coast of Syria.
- Phoenices, -um, m., *Phoenicians*.
- Pictonēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
- Pīraeus, -ī, m., the principal port of Athens.
- Pīstratus, -ī, m., a tyrant of Athens.
- Placentia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul.
- Plancus, -ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, an officer of Caesar.
- Plataeēnsēs, -ium, m., the inhabitants of Plataea, a town in Boeotia.
- Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- Plōtius, -tī, m., *Marcus Plotius*, one of Caesar's followers.
- Pocilē, -ēs, f., a celebrated portico in Athens.
- Poenicus, -a, -um, *Carthaginian*.
- Poenus, -ī, m., an inhabitant of Carthage.
- Polybius, -bī, m., a Greek historian.
- Polymnis, -idis (-ī), m., the father of Epaminondas.
- Pompēiānus, -a, -um, *Pompeian*.
- Pompēius, -eī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, a triumvir and a rival of Caesar. 2. *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter.
- Pompōnius, -nī, m., see *Atticus*.
- Pontus, -ī, m., a country of Asia Minor.
- Postumus, -ī, m., the name of a Roman family. *Fulvius Postumus*, one of Caesar's soldiers.
- Procillus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus.
- Prūsia or Prūsias, -ae, m., a king of Bithynia.
- Ptianiī, -ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.
- Ptolemaeus, -ī, m. 1. *Ptolemy*, king of Egypt, father of Cleopatra. 2. Son of preceding.
- Ptolemāis, -idis, f., a city of Phoenicia.
- Pūliō, -ōnis, m., one of Pompey's officers.

Pullō, -ōnis, m., *Titus Pullo*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
 Puteolī, -ōrum, m., a city of Campania.
 Pydna, -ae, f., a city of Macedonia.
 Pŷrēnaeus, -a, -um, of the *Pyrenees (mountains)*; between Gaul and Spain.
 Pŷthagorēus, -ī, m., a follower of the philosopher Pythagoras.
 Pŷthia, -ae, f., the priestess of Apollo.

Q., abb. for *Quintus*, a Roman given name.
 Quīntius, -tī, m., see *Flāminīus*.

Raucillus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Allobroges.
 Rauracī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
 Rebilus, -ī, m., *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Redonēs, -um, m., a tribe of western Gaul.
 Rēmus, -a, -um, *Reman*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
 Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river *Rhine*.
 Rhodanus, -ī, m., the river *Rhone*.
 Rhodius, -a, -um, *Rhodian*; generally masc. plu., the inhabitants of the island of Rhodes in the Aegean Sea.
 Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome*.
 Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*.
 Rōscius, -cī, m., *Lucius Roscius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Rūfus, -ī, m. 1. *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 2. *Marcus Minucius Rufus*, a master of horse under Fabius Maximus.
 Rutēnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
 Rutilus, -ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

S., abb. for *Sextus*, a Roman given name.
 Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., an ancient tribe of central Italy.
 Sabīnus, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Sabis, Sabis, m., a river in northern Gaul.
 Sacrativir, -virī, m., *Marcus Sacrativir*, a knight in Caesar's army.
 Sagūntum, -ī, n., a city of Spain.
 Salamīnius, -a, -um, of *Salamis*.
 Salamīs, -īnis (acc. -a), f., an island off the coast of Attica.
 Samarobrīva, -ae, f., a city in Belgic Gaul.
 Santonī, -ōrum (*Santonēs, -um*), m., a tribe of western Gaul.
 Sardēs (-is), -um (acc. -īs), f., a city of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
 Sardinia, -ae, f., an island west of Italy.
 Sardiniēnsis, -e, *Sardinian*.
 Scaeva, -ae, m., a centurion of Caesar.
 Scīpiō, -ōnis, m., the name of a Roman family. 1. *Quintus Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio*, Pompey's father-in-law. 2. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, consul, B.C. 218, father of 3. *Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus*, defeated Hannibal at Zama.

- Scȳrus, -ī, f., an island in the Aegean Sea.
 Scythēs, -ae, m., generally plu., *the Scythians*, a tribe living north of the Caspian and Euxine Seas.
 Sedulius, -lī, m., a chieftain of the Lemovices.
 Sedūnī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of the Alps.
 Sedusiī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Eastern Germany.
 Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of east central Gaul.
 Semprōnius, -nī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Rutilus, Gracchus, Longus**.
 Sena, -ae, f., a town on the coast of Umbria, in Italy.
 Senonēs, -um, m., a tribe of north central Gaul.
 Septimius, -mī, m., *Lucius Septimius*, a military tribune.
 Sēquana, -ae, m., a river in Gaul, the modern *Seine*.
 Sēquanus, -a, -um, *Sequanian*; in plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
 Ser., abb. for *Servius*, a Roman given name.
 Sertōrius, -rī, m., the name of a Roman gens. *Quintus Sertorius*, a partisan of Marius and commander in Spain.
 Servīlius, -lī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Servilius Geminus*, consul, B.C. 217. 2. *Publius Servilius Vatia*, consul, B.C. 48.
 Sextius, -tī, m. 1. See **Baculus**. 2. *Titus Sextius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Sibusātēs, -um, m., a tribe of extreme southwestern Gaul.
 Sicilia, -ae, f., an island at the southern end of Italy.
 Sīlēnus, -ī, m., a Greek historian.
 Sōl, Sōlis, m., *the sun*.
 Sōsilus, -i, m., a Spartan historian.
 Sparta, -ae, f., the capital of Laconia, in southern Greece.
 Staberius, -rī, m., a commander in Pompey's army.
 Stēsagorās, -ae, m., a brother of Miltiades.
 Strȳmōn, -onis, m., a river of Thrace.
 Suēbus, -a, -um, *of the Suebi*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of central Germany.
 Suessiōnēs, -um, a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
 Sugambri, -ōrum, a tribe of eastern Germany.
 Sūlla, -ae, m. 1. *Lucius Sulla*, Roman dictator. 2. *Publius Sulla*, nephew of the preceding; a lieutenant of Caesar.
 Sulpicius, -cī, m., see **Rūfus, Galba, Blithō**.
 Syria, -ae, f., a country in Asia, southeast of Asia Minor.
 Syriacus, -a, -um, *Syrian*.

T., abb. for *Titus*, a Roman given name.

Tamphilus, -ī, m. 1. *Gnaeus Baebius Tamphilus*, consul B.C. 182. 2. *Marcus Baebius Tamphilus*, consul, B.C. 181.

Tarbellī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in extreme southwestern Gaul.

Tarentīnus, -a, -um, *of Tarentum*, a town of southern Italy.

Tarusātēs, -īum, m., a tribe of southwestern Gaul.

- Tasgetius**, -tī, m., chieftain of the Carnutes.
Tectosagēs, -um, m., a tribe of southern Gaul; a branch of the Volcae.
Tencterī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of eastern Germany.
Terentius, -tī, m., see **Varrō**.
Teutonī, -ōrum (**Teutonēs**, -um), m., a tribe of northern Germany.
Thasīi, -orum, m., the inhabitants of Thasos, an island in the Aegean Sea.
Thēbae, -ārum, f., the chief city of Boeotia.
Thēbānus, -ī, m., a *Theban*, an inhabitant of Thebes in Boeotia.
Themistoclēs, -is (-ī), acc. -em, -ēn, m., a famous Athenian statesman and general.
Thermopylae, -ārum, f., a narrow pass on the coast of Thessaly.
Thessalia, -ae, f., a country in northern Greece.
Thrāx, **Thrācis**, m., a *Thracian*, an inhabitant of Thrace, in north-eastern Greece.
Thūcŷdidēs, -is, m., a Greek historian.
Ti., abb. for *Tiberius*, a Roman given name.
Tiberis, -is, m., a river of Italy.
Tīburtius, -tī, m., *Lucius Tiburtius*, a follower of Caesar.
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, of the *Tigurini*; generally masc. plu., a tribe of eastern Gaul.
Tillius, -lī, m., *Quintus Tillius*, a follower of Caesar.
Titūrius, -rī, m., see **Sabīnus**.
Tolōsātēs, -ium, m., a tribe in southern Gaul.
Torquātus, -ī, m., *Lucius Manlius Torquatus*, a commander of Caesar's forces.
Trallēs, -ium, a town of Lydia, in Asia Minor.
Trānspadānus, -a, -um, across the River Po.
Trasumennus, -ī, m., a lake in Etruria, in Italy.
Trebia, -ae, f., a river in northern Italy.
Trebōnius, -nī, m. 1. *Gaius Trebonius*, a lieutenant of Caesar. 2. *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight, B. G., VI, 40.
Trēverī, -ōrum, a tribe of northeastern Gaul.
Triārius, -rī, m., a commander under Pompey.
Tribocī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Germans in Belgic Gaul.
Troezēn, **Troezēnis**, (acc. -a), f., a city in the Peloponnesus.
Troucillus, -i, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gallic interpreter.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Germany on the Rhine.
Tullius, -lī, m., the name of a Roman gens. See **Cicerō**.
Turonī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
Tusculum, -ī, n., a city of Latium.
Tūtīcānus, -ī, m., *Tuticanus Gallus*, one of Caesar's followers.
Ubiī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
Usipetēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the lower Rhine.

- Valerius, -rī, m.,** the name of a Roman gens. See **Troucillus, Flaccus, Cabūrus, Procillus, Messāla.**
Vangionēs, -um, m., a German tribe on the Rhine.
Varrō, -ōnis, m. 1. *Gaius Terentius Varro*, consul, B.C. 216. 2. *Aulus Terentius Varro*, a soldier of Pompey.
Vatīnius, -nī, m., *Publius Vatinius*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
Veliocassēs, -um, m., a Belgic tribe of northern Gaul.
Vellāvii, -orum, m., a tribe of southern Gaul.
Venelli, -ōrum, m., a tribe of northern Gaul.
Venetī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme western Gaul.
Veneticus, -a, -um, of the Veneti.
Venusia, -ae, f., a town of Apulia, in southern Italy.
Veragrī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in the Alps.
Verbigenus, -ī, m., a district of Helvetia.
Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni.
Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., a chieftain of the Arverni, and leader of the Gauls.
Verticō, -ōnis, m., one of the Nervii.
Verucloetius, -tī, m., an ambassador of the Helvetii.
Vesontio, -ōnis, m., a town of the Sequani.
Victōria, -ae, f., the goddess of victory.
Viridomārus, -ī, m., a chief of the Haedui.
Viridovīx, -īcis, m., a chief of the Venelli.
Viromanduī, -ōrum, m., a tribe of Belgic Gaul.
Vocātēs, -ium, m., a people of Aquitania.
Voçciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum.
Vocontii, -ōrum, m., a tribe of extreme southeastern Gaul.
Volcae, -ārum, m., see **Tectosagēs.**
Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune.
Vorēnus, -ī, m., *Lucius Vorenius*, a centurion in Caesar's army.
Vulcānus, -ī, m., the god of fire.
Vulsō, -ōnis, m., *Gnaeus Manlius Vulso*, consul, B.C. 189.

Xerxēs, -is, m., a king of Persia.

Zama, -ae, f., a town of Numidia in Africa.

ESSENTIALS OF LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

By HENRY C. PEARSON, Horace Mann School,
Teachers College, New York. Author of Latin Prose
Composition, Greek Prose Composition

\$0.90

THIS book is designed to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's Gallic War. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that may be taken up or omitted, according to the desire of the teacher.

¶ The vocabularies have been carefully selected, and contain, with very few exceptions, only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's Gallic War. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons. There is a constant comparison of English and Latin usage, but not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

¶ The topics, such as nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to one topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony. The work is provided with ample reviews; the regular exercises review the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and these are supplemented by review exercises. The last twenty pages are devoted to carefully graded material for reading, composed of selections from Viri Romae and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's Gallic War, Book II., in simplified form.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

PEARSON'S LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

By HENRY CARR PEARSON, Horace Mann School,
Teachers College, New York.

Complete	\$1.00
Part II, Based on Caesar50
Part III, Based on Cicero50

THIS book combines a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and affords constant practice in writing Latin at sight. It meets the most exacting college entrance requirements.

¶ Part I is a summary of the fundamental principles of Latin grammar and syntax, and contains clear, concise explanations of many points that are troublesome to the ordinary pupil. It is divided into graded lessons of convenient length, each lesson including English-Latin exercises for practice. References to all the leading grammars are also given.

¶ Part II contains short, disconnected English sentences and some continuous narrative based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. Part III presents material for translation into Latin based upon Cicero. There are also exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

¶ A valuable feature of the book is the Review Lessons, introduced at intervals. These contain lists of important words for vocabulary study, and together with the summaries of grammatical principles afford excellent material for review work and practice in sight translation. For purposes of emphasis and intensive study, typical Latin sentences, illustrating important grammatic usages, idioms, and phrases are placed at the head of each chapter based on Books I and II of Caesar and the first Catilinian oration of Cicero.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

THIS BOOK IS DUE ON THE LAST DATE
STAMPED BELOW

MAY 31 1919

FEB 7 1955

JAN 25 1955 LU

1 Oct '58 WJ

REC'D LD

OCT 26 1958

FEB 25 1966 89

MAY 9 '66 92 RCD

760

J33

227001

Janes

